Standards

Standards MX

Message Reference Guide

FIToFIPaymentStatusReportV15 (pacs.002.001.15)

This publication includes information exported from the MyStandards web platform.

For the official documentation of the messages included in this publication, see the relevant Standards MX Message Reference Guides available on swift.com > Support > Documentation

Table of Contents

1 MX pacs.002.001.15 FIToFIPaymentStatusReportV15

1.1 MessageDefinition Functionality

Scope

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport message is sent by an instructed agent to the previous party in the payment chain. It is used to inform this party about the positive or negative status of an instruction (either single or file). It is also used to report on a pending instruction.

Usage

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport message is exchanged between agents to provide status information about instructions previously sent. Its usage will always be governed by a bilateral agreement between the agents.

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport message can be used to provide information about the status (e.g. rejection, acceptance) of a credit transfer instruction, a direct debit instruction, as well as other intra-agent instructions (for example FIToFIPaymentCancellationRequest).

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport message refers to the original instruction(s) by means of references only or by means of references and a set of elements from the original instruction.

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReport may also be sent to the receiver of the payment in a real time payment scenario, as both sides of the transactions must be informed of the status of the transaction (for example either the beneficiary is credited, or the transaction is rejected).

Outline

The FIToFIPaymentStatusReportV15 MessageDefinition is composed of 4 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics shared by all individual transactions included in the status report message.

B. OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus

Original group information concerning the group of transactions, to which the status report message refers to.

C. TransactionInformationAndStatus

Information concerning the original transactions, to which the status report message refers.

D. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

1.2 Structure

Index	Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Message root <Document> <FIToFIPmtStsRpt>	[1..1]		✓C8, ✓C9, ✓C10, ✓C11, ✓C18, ✓C19, ✓C20, C28	
		GroupHeader <*GrpHdr*>	[1..1]			15
		MessageIdentification <*MsgId*>	[1..1]	Text		15
		CreationDateTime <*CreDtTm*>	[1..1]	DateTime		16
		InstructingAgent <*InstgAgt*>	[0..1]	±		16
		InstructedAgent <*InstdAgt*>	[0..1]	±		16
		OriginalBusinessQuery <*OrgnlBizQry*>	[0..1]	±		17
		OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus <*OrgnlGrpInfAndSts*>	[0..*]		✓C26, C17	17
		OriginalMessageIdentification <*OrgnlMsgId*>	[1..1]	Text		18
		OriginalMessageNameIdentification <*OrgnlMsgNmId*>	[1..1]	Text		19
		OriginalCreationDateTime <*OrgnlCreDtTm*>	[0..1]	DateTime		19
		OriginalNumberOfTransactions <*OrgnlNbOfTxs*>	[0..1]	Text		19
		OriginalControlSum <*OrgnlCtrlSum*>	[0..1]	Quantity		19
		GroupStatus <*GrpSts*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		19
		StatusReasonInformation <*StsRsnInf*>	[0..*]		✓C27	19
		Originator <*Orgtr*>	[0..1]	±		20
		Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]			21
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		22
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		22
		AdditionalInformation <*AddtlInf*>	[0..*]	Text		22
		NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus <*NbOfTxsPerSts*>	[0..*]	±		22
		TransactionInformationAndStatus <*TxInfAndSts*>	[0..*]			22
		StatusIdentification <*StsId*>	[0..1]	Text		26
		OriginalGroupInformation <*OrgnlGrpInf*>	[0..1]	±		26
		OriginalInstructionIdentification <*OrgnlInstrId*>	[0..1]	Text		27
		OriginalEndToEndIdentification <*OrgnlEndToEndId*>	[0..1]	Text		27

Index	Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		OriginalTransactionIdentification <*OrgnlTxId*>	[0..1]	Text		27
		OriginalUETR <*OrgnlUETR*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		27
		TransactionStatus <*TxSts*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		27
		StatusReasonInformation <*StsRsnInf*>	[0..*]		✓C27	27
		Originator <*Orgtr*>	[0..1]	±		28
		Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]			29
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		30
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		30
		AdditionalInformation <*AddtlInf*>	[0..*]	Text		30
		ChargesInformation <*ChrgsInf*>	[0..*]			30
		Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount	✓C1, ✓C7	31
		Agent <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		31
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			32
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		32
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	±		32
		AcceptanceDateTime <*AccptncDtTm*>	[0..1]	DateTime		33
		ProcessingDate <*PrcgDt*>	[0..1]	±		33
		EffectiveInterbankSettlementDate <*FctvIntrBkSttlmDt*>	[0..1]	±		33
		AccountServicerReference <*AcctSvcrRef*>	[0..1]	Text		33
		ClearingSystemReference <*ClrSysRef*>	[0..1]	Text		34
		CreditSettlementKey <*CdtSttlmKey*>	[0..1]	Text		34
		InstructingAgent <*InstgAgt*>	[0..1]	±		34
		InstructedAgent <*InstdAgt*>	[0..1]	±		34
		OriginalTransactionReference <*OrgnlTxRef*>	[0..1]			35
		InterbankSettlementAmount <*IntrBkSttlmAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C1, ✓C7	38
		Amount <*Amt*>	[0..1]	±		39
		InterbankSettlementDate <*IntrBkSttlmDt*>	[0..1]	Date		39
		RequestedCollectionDate <*ReqdColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		39
		RequestedExecutionDate <*ReqdExctnDt*>	[0..1]	±		39
		CreditorSchemeIdentification <*CdtrSchmeId*>	[0..1]	±		40

Index	Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		SettlementInformation <*SttlmInf*>	[0..1]		✓C15, ✓C16, ✓C22, ✓C23, ✓C24, ✓C25, ✓C30, ✓C31	41
		SettlementMethod <*SttlmMtd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		44
		SettlementAccount <*SttlmAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	44
		ClearingSystem <*ClrSys*>	[0..1]			45
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		45
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		45
		InstructingReimbursementAgent <*InstgRmbrsmntAgt*>	[0..1]	±		45
		InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <*InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	46
		InstructedReimbursementAgent <*InstdRmbrsmntAgt*>	[0..1]	±		47
		InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <*InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	48
		ThirdReimbursementAgent <*ThrdRmbrsmntAgt*>	[0..1]	±		48
		ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <*ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	49
		PaymentTypeInformation <*PmtTpInf*>	[0..1]	±		50
		PaymentMethod <*PmtMtd*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		50
		MandateRelatedInformation <*MndtRltdInf*>	[0..1]			51
	{Or	**DirectDebitMandate** <*DrctDbtMndt*>	[0..1]		✓C2, ✓C3	53
		MandateIdentification <*MndtId*>	[0..1]	Text		55
		DateOfSignature <*DtOfSgntr*>	[0..1]	Date		55
		AmendmentIndicator <*AmdmntInd*>	[0..1]	Indicator		55
		AmendmentInformationDetails <*AmdmntInfDtls*>	[0..1]			55
		OriginalMandateIdentification <*OrgnlMndtId*>	[0..1]	Text		56
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <*OrgnlCdtrSchmeId*>	[0..1]	±		56
		OriginalCreditorAgent <*OrgnlCdtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		57
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <*OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	58
		OriginalDebtor <*OrgnlDbtr*>	[0..1]	±		59

Index	Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		OriginalDebtorAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	60
		OriginalDebtorAgent <*OrgnlDbtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		61
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	62
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate <*OrgnlFnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		63
		OriginalFrequency <*OrgnlFrqcy*>	[0..1]	±		63
		OriginalReason <*OrgnlRsn*>	[0..1]			63
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		64
		OriginalTrackingDays <*OrgnlTrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		64
		ElectronicSignature <*ElctrncSgntr*>	[0..1]	Text		64
		FirstCollectionDate <*FrstColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		64
		FinalCollectionDate <*FnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		64
		Frequency <*Frqcy*>	[0..1]	±		64
		Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]			65
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		65
		TrackingDays <*TrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		65
	Or}	**CreditTransferMandate** <*CdtTrfMndt*>	[0..1]	±		65
		RemittanceInformation <*RmtInf*>	[0..1]	±		66
		UltimateDebtor <*UltmtDbtr*>	[0..1]			66
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		66
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		67
		Debtor <*Dbtr*>	[0..1]			68
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		68
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		69
		DebtorAccount <*DbtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	70
		DebtorAgent <*DbtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		71
		DebtorAgentAccount <*DbtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	71
		CreditorAgent <*CdtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		72

Index	Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		CreditorAgentAccount <*CdtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	73
		Creditor <*Cdtr*>	[0..1]			74
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		74
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		75
		CreditorAccount <*CdtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	76
		UltimateCreditor <*UltmtCdtr*>	[0..1]			77
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		77
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		78
		Purpose <*Purp*>	[0..1]	±		79
		SupplementaryData <*SplmtryData*>	[0..*]	±	C29	79
		SupplementaryData <*SplmtryData*>	[0..*]	±	C29	80

1.3   Constraints

C1   ActiveOrHistoricCurrency ✓

(Rule)

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* D00006

– *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

C2   AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule ✓

(Rule)

If AmendmentIndicator is false, then AmendmentInformationDetails is not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00013

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for false amendment indicator and details.

C3   AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule ✓

(Rule)

If AmendmentIndicator is true, then AmendmentInformationDetails must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00012

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for true amendment indicator and details.

C4   AnyBIC ✓

(Rule)

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* D00008

– *Error Text:* Invalid BIC.

C5   BICFI ✓

(Rule)

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* D00001

– *Error Text:* Invalid FI BIC.

C6   Country ✓

(Rule)

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code). (Algorithm)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* D00004

– *Error Text:* Invalid Country Code.

C7   CurrencyAmount ✓

(Rule)

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* D00007

– *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

C8   **GroupStatusAcceptedRule** ✓

(Rule)

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/GroupStatus is present and is equal to ACTC (AcceptedTechnicalValidation), ACCP (AcceptedCustomerProfile), ACSP (AcceptedSettlementInProcess), ACSC (AcceptedSettlementCompleted) or ACWC (AcceptedWithChange), then TransactionInformationAndStatus/TransactionStatus must be different from RJCT (Rejected). (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00063

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for group and transaction statuses.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C9   **GroupStatusPendingRule** ✓

(Rule)

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/GroupStatus is present and is equal to PDNG (Pending), then TransactionInformationAndStatus/TransactionStatus must be different from RJCT (Rejected). (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00064

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for group and transaction statuses.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C10   **GroupStatusReceivedRule** ✓

(Rule)

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/GroupStatus is present and is equal to RCVD (Received), then TransactionInformationAndStatus/TransactionStatus is not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00066

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for group and transaction statuses.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C11 GroupStatusRejectedRule ✓

(Rule)

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/GroupStatus is present and is equal to RJCT (Rejected), then TransactionInformationAndStatus/TransactionStatus, if present, must be equal to RJCT (Rejected). (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00065

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for group and transaction statuses.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C12 IBAN ✓

(Rule)

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* D00003

– *Error Text:* Invalid IBAN format or invalid check digits.

C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

(Guideline)

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓

(Rule)

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present. (CrossElementSimpleRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00498

– *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

C15 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓

(Rule)

If InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructedReimbursementAgent must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00037

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructed reimbursement agent account.

C16   InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓

(Rule)

If InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00038

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructing reimbursement agent account.

C17   NumberOfTransactionPerStatusGuideline

(Guideline)

OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus should only be present if GroupStatus equals 'PART'.

C18   OriginalGroupInformationAbsenceRule ✓

(Rule)

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus is absent, then

TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/OriginalGroupInformation must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00345

– *Error Text:* Invalid OriginalGroupInformation presence.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C19   OriginalGroupInformationMultiplePresenceRule ✓

(Rule)

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus is present and multiple times (Occurrence > 1), then TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/OriginalGroupInformation must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00347

– *Error Text:* Missing OriginalGroupInformation in transaction details.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C20   OriginalGroupInformationSinglePresenceRule ✓

(Rule)

If OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus is present and only once, then
TransactionInformationAndStatus[*]/OriginalGroupInformation must be
absent. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00346

– *Error Text:* Invalid OriginalGroupInformation presence in transaction details.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C21   RemittanceAmountAndTypeGuideline

(Guideline)

If Type/Code is equal to CREN, DUPA or REMI for RemittanceAmountAndType,
RemittanceAmountAndType must not be repeated.

C22   SettlementMethodAgentRule ✓

(Rule)

If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ReimbursementAgent(s) and
ClearingSystem are not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00018

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for settlement method INGA or INDA.

C23   SettlementMethodClearingRule ✓

(Rule)

If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then SettlementAccount and ReimbursementAgent(s)
are not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00019

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for settlement method CLRG.

C24   SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule ✓

(Rule)

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then InstructedReimbursementAgent or
InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00076

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for cover settlement method and reimbursement agents.

C25   SettlementMethodCoverRule ✓

(Rule)

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then SettlementAccount and ClearingSystem are not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00075

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for cover settlement method with settlement account and clearing system.

C26   StatusReasonInformationRule ✓

(Rule)

If GroupStatus is present and is different from RJCT or PDNG then StatusReasonInformation/ AdditionalInformation must be absent. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00078

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for additional status reason.

C27   StatusReasonRule ✓

(Rule)

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AddititionalInformation must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00077

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for additional status reason.

C28   SupplementaryDataRule

(Rule)

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C29   SupplementaryDataRule

(Rule)

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

C30 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓

(Rule)

If ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then ThirdReimbursementAgent must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00039

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for third reimbursement agent account.

C31 ThirdReimbursementAgentRule ✓

(Rule)

If ThirdReimbursementAgent is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent and InstructedReimbursementAgent must both be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00040

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for third reimbursement agent.

1.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

1.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of characteristics shared by all individual transactions included in the status report message.

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following **GroupHeader120** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		MessageIdentification *<MsgId>*	[1..1]	Text		15
		CreationDateTime *<CreDtTm>*	[1..1]	DateTime		16
		InstructingAgent *<InstgAgt>*	[0..1]	±		16
		InstructedAgent *<InstdAgt>*	[0..1]	±		16
		OriginalBusinessQuery *<OrgnlBizQry>*	[0..1]	±		17

1.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: ISODateTime on page 199

1.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: ISODateTime on page 193

1.4.1.3 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

Usage: The instructing agent is the party sending the status message and not the party that sent the original instruction that is being reported on.

InstructingAgent <InstgAgt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.1.4 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

Usage: The instructed agent is the party receiving the status message and not the party that received the original instruction that is being reported on.

InstructedAgent <InstdAgt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.1.5 OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original requestor, to unambiguously identify the business query message.

OriginalBusinessQuery <OrgnlBizQry> contains the following elements (see OriginalBusinessQuery1 on page 104 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		MessageIdentification *<MsgId>*	[1..1]	Text		104
		MessageNameIdentification *<MsgNmId>*	[0..1]	Text		104
		CreationDateTime *<CreDtTm>*	[0..1]	DateTime		104

1.4.2 OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus <OrgnlGrpInfAndSts>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Original group information concerning the group of transactions, to which the status report message refers to.

Impacted by: ✓C26 StatusReasonInformationRule ✓, C17 NumberOfTransactionPerStatusGuideline

OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus <OrgnlGrpInfAndSts> contains the following
OriginalGroupHeader22 elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		OriginalMessageIdentification *<OrgnlMsgId>*	[1..1]	Text		18
		OriginalMessageNameIdentification *<OrgnlMsgNmId>*	[1..1]	Text		19
		OriginalCreationDateTime *<OrgnlCreDtTm>*	[0..1]	DateTime		19
		OriginalNumberOfTransactions *<OrgnlNbOfTxs>*	[0..1]	Text		19
		OriginalControlSum *<OrgnlCtrlSum>*	[0..1]	Quantity		19
		GroupStatus *<GrpSts>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		19
		StatusReasonInformation *<StsRsnInf>*	[0..*]		✓C27	19
		Originator *<Orgtr>*	[0..1]	±		20
		Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]			21
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		22
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		22
		AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..*]	Text		22
		NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus *<NbOfTxsPerSts>*	[0..*]	±		22

Constraints

- **NumberOfTransactionPerStatusGuideline**

  OriginalGroupInformationAndStatus/NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus should only be present if GroupStatus equals 'PART'.

- **StatusReasonInformationRule**

  If GroupStatus is present and is different from RJCT or PDNG then StatusReasonInformation/ AdditionalInformation must be absent.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00078

  – *Error Text:* Invalid message content for additional status reason.

1.4.2.1 OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the original instructing party, to unambiguously identify the original message.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.2.2 OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the original message name identifier to which the message refers.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.2.3 OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the original message was created.

Datatype: ISODateTime on page 193

1.4.2.4 OriginalNumberOfTransactions <OrgnlNbOfTxs>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number of individual transactions contained in the original message.

Datatype: Max15NumericText on page 198

1.4.2.5 OriginalControlSum <OrgnlCtrlSum>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total of all individual amounts included in the original message, irrespective of currencies.

Datatype: DecimalNumber on page 196

1.4.2.6 GroupStatus <GrpSts>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the status of a group of transactions.

Datatype: ExternalPaymentGroupStatus1Code on page 179

1.4.2.7 StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides detailed information on the status reason.

Impacted by: ✓C27 StatusReasonRule ✓

StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf> contains the following **StatusReasonInformation14** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Originator *<Orgtr>*	[0..1]	±		20
		Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]			21
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		22
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		22
		AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..*]	Text		22

Constraints

- **StatusReasonRule**

   If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AddititionalInformation must be present.

   Error handling:

   – *Error severity:* Fatal

   – *Error Code:* X00077

   – *Error Text:* Invalid message content for additional status reason.

1.4.2.7.1 Originator <Orgtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that issues the status.

Originator <Orgtr> contains the following elements (see <u>PartyIdentification272 on page 107</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		115

1.4.2.7.2 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the status report.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **StatusReason6Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		22
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		22

1.4.2.7.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the status, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: ExternalStatusReason1Code on page 183

1.4.2.7.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the status, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.2.7.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Further details on the status reason.

Usage: Additional information can be used for several purposes such as the reporting of repaired information.

Datatype: Max105Text on page 197

1.4.2.8 NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus <NbOfTxsPerSts>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Detailed information on the number of transactions for each identical transaction status.

NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus <NbOfTxsPerSts> contains the following elements (see NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus5 on page 106 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		DetailedNumberOfTransactions *<DtldNbOfTxs>*	[1..1]	Text		106
		DetailedStatus *<DtldSts>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
		DetailedControlSum *<DtldCtrlSum>*	[0..1]	Quantity		106

1.4.3 TransactionInformationAndStatus <TxInfAndSts>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Information concerning the original transactions, to which the status report message refers.

TransactionInformationAndStatus <TxInfAndSts> contains the following **PaymentTransaction164** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		StatusIdentification <StsId>	[0..1]	Text		26
		OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]	±		26
		OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>	[0..1]	Text		27
		OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		27
		OriginalTransactionIdentification <OrgnlTxId>	[0..1]	Text		27
		OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		27
		TransactionStatus <TxSts>	[0..1]	CodeSet		27
		StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf>	[0..*]		✓C27	27
		Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		28
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			29
	{Or	**Code** <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		30
	Or}	**Proprietary** <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		30
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		30
		ChargesInformation <ChrgsInf>	[0..*]			30
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	✓C1, ✓C7	31
		Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		31
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			32
	{Or	**Code** <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		32
	Or}	**Proprietary** <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		32
		AcceptanceDateTime <AccptncDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		33
		ProcessingDate <PrcgDt>	[0..1]	±		33
		EffectiveInterbankSettlementDate <FctvIntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	±		33
		AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>	[0..1]	Text		33
		ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		34
		CreditSettlementKey <CdtSttlmKey>	[0..1]	Text		34
		InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		34
		InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		34
		OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>	[0..1]			35

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		InterbankSettlementAmount *<IntrBkSttlmAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	✓C1, ✓C7	38
		Amount *<Amt>*	[0..1]	±		39
		InterbankSettlementDate *<IntrBkSttlmDt>*	[0..1]	Date		39
		RequestedCollectionDate *<ReqdColltnDt>*	[0..1]	Date		39
		RequestedExecutionDate *<ReqdExctnDt>*	[0..1]	±		39
		CreditorSchemeIdentification *<CdtrSchmeId>*	[0..1]	±		40
		SettlementInformation *<SttlmInf>*	[0..1]		✓C15, ✓C16, ✓C22, ✓C23, ✓C24, ✓C25, ✓C30, ✓C31	41
		SettlementMethod *<SttlmMtd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		44
		SettlementAccount *<SttlmAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	44
		ClearingSystem *<ClrSys>*	[0..1]			45
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		45
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		45
		InstructingReimbursementAgent *<InstgRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		45
		InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount *<InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	46
		InstructedReimbursementAgent *<InstdRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		47
		InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount *<InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	48
		ThirdReimbursementAgent *<ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		48
		ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount *<ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	49
		PaymentTypeInformation *<PmtTpInf>*	[0..1]	±		50
		PaymentMethod *<PmtMtd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		50
		MandateRelatedInformation *<MndtRltdInf>*	[0..1]			51
	{Or	**DirectDebitMandate** *<DrctDbtMndt>*	[0..1]		✓C2, ✓C3	53
		MandateIdentification *<MndtId>*	[0..1]	Text		55
		DateOfSignature *<DtOfSgntr>*	[0..1]	Date		55
		AmendmentIndicator *<AmdmntInd>*	[0..1]	Indicator		55

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		AmendmentInformationDetails <*AmdmntInfDtls*>	[0..1]			55
		OriginalMandateIdentification <*OrgnlMndtId*>	[0..1]	Text		56
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <*OrgnlCdtrSchmeId*>	[0..1]	±		56
		OriginalCreditorAgent <*OrgnlCdtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		57
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <*OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	58
		OriginalDebtor <*OrgnlDbtr*>	[0..1]	±		59
		OriginalDebtorAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	60
		OriginalDebtorAgent <*OrgnlDbtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		61
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	62
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate <*OrgnlFnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		63
		OriginalFrequency <*OrgnlFrqcy*>	[0..1]	±		63
		OriginalReason <*OrgnlRsn*>	[0..1]			63
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		64
		OriginalTrackingDays <*OrgnlTrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		64
		ElectronicSignature <*ElctrncSgntr*>	[0..1]	Text		64
		FirstCollectionDate <*FrstColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		64
		FinalCollectionDate <*FnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		64
		Frequency <*Frqcy*>	[0..1]	±		64
		Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]			65
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		65
		TrackingDays <*TrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		65
	Or}	**CreditTransferMandate** <*CdtTrfMndt*>	[0..1]	±		65
		RemittanceInformation <*RmtInf*>	[0..1]	±		66
		UltimateDebtor <*UltmtDbtr*>	[0..1]			66
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		66
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		67
		Debtor <*Dbtr*>	[0..1]			68

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		68
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		69
		DebtorAccount <*DbtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	70
		DebtorAgent <*DbtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		71
		DebtorAgentAccount <*DbtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	71
		CreditorAgent <*CdtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		72
		CreditorAgentAccount <*CdtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	73
		Creditor <*Cdtr*>	[0..1]			74
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		74
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		75
		CreditorAccount <*CdtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	76
		UltimateCreditor <*UltmtCdtr*>	[0..1]			77
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		77
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		78
		Purpose <*Purp*>	[0..1]	±		79
		SupplementaryData <*SplmtryData*>	[0..*]	±	C29	79

1.4.3.1 StatusIdentification <StsId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by an instructing party for an instructed party, to unambiguously identify the reported status.

Usage: The instructing party is the party sending the status message and not the party that sent the original instruction that is being reported on.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.3.2 OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the original instructing party, to unambiguously identify the original message.

OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf> contains the following elements (see OriginalGroupInformation29 on page 106 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		107
		OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		107
		OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		107

1.4.3.3 OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original instructing party for the original instructed party, to unambiguously identify the original instruction.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.3.4 OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original transaction.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.3.5 OriginalTransactionIdentification <OrgnlTxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original first instructing agent, to unambiguously identify the transaction.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.3.6 OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Universally unique identifier to provide the original end-to-end reference of a payment transaction.

Datatype: UUIDv4Identifier on page 196

1.4.3.7 TransactionStatus <TxSts>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the status of a transaction, as published in an external payment transaction status code list.

Datatype: ExternalPaymentTransactionStatus1Code on page 180

1.4.3.8 StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides detailed information on the status reason.

Impacted by: ✓C27 StatusReasonRule ✓

StatusReasonInformation <StsRsnInf> contains the following **StatusReasonInformation14** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Originator *<Orgtr>*	[0..1]	±		28
		Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]			29
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		30
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		30
		AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..*]	Text		30

Constraints

• **StatusReasonRule**

If Reason/Code is equal to NARR, then AddititionalInformation must be present.

Error handling:

 – *Error severity:* Fatal

 – *Error Code:* X00077

 – *Error Text:* Invalid message content for additional status reason.

1.4.3.8.1 Originator <Orgtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that issues the status.

Originator <Orgtr> contains the following elements (see <u>PartyIdentification272 on page 107</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		115

1.4.3.8.2 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the status report.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **StatusReason6Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		30
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		30

1.4.3.8.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the status, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: ExternalStatusReason1Code on page 183

1.4.3.8.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the status, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.3.8.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Further details on the status reason.

Usage: Additional information can be used for several purposes such as the reporting of repaired information.

Datatype: Max105Text on page 197

1.4.3.9 ChargesInformation <ChrgsInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides information on the charges related to the processing of the rejection of the instruction.

Usage: This is passed on for information purposes only. Settlement of the charges will be done separately.

ChargesInformation <ChrgsInf> contains the following **Charges16** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount	✓C1, ✓C7	31
		Agent <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		31
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			32
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		32
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	±		32

1.4.3.9.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Transaction charges to be paid by the charge bearer.

Impacted by: ✓C1 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency ✓, ✓C7 CurrencyAmount ✓

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* D00006

  – *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* D00007

  – *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

1.4.3.9.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Agent that takes the transaction charges or to which the transaction charges are due.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see <u>BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.9.3 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Defines the type of charges.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **ChargeType3Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		32
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	±		32

1.4.3.9.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Charge type, in a coded form.

Datatype: <u>ExternalChargeType1Code on page 172</u>

1.4.3.9.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of charge in a proprietary form, as defined by the issuer.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following elements (see GenericIdentification3 on page 101 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		101
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		101

1.4.3.10 AcceptanceDateTime <AccptncDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Point in time when the payment order from the initiating party meets the processing conditions of the account servicing agent. This means that the account servicing agent has received the payment order and has applied checks such as authorisation, availability of funds.

Datatype: ISODateTime on page 193

1.4.3.11 ProcessingDate <PrcgDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date/time at which the instruction was processed by the specified party.

ProcessingDate <PrcgDt> contains one of the following elements (see DateAndDateTime2Choice on page 87 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		87
	Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		87

1.4.3.12 EffectiveInterbankSettlementDate <FctvIntrBkSttlmDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which a transaction is completed and cleared, that is, payment is effected.

EffectiveInterbankSettlementDate <FctvIntrBkSttlmDt> contains one of the following elements (see DateAndDateTime2Choice on page 87 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		87
	Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		87

1.4.3.13 AccountServicerReference <AcctSvcrRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference, as assigned by the account servicing institution, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.3.14 ClearingSystemReference <ClrSysRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify the instruction.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.3.15 CreditSettlementKey <CdtSttlmKey>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Cryptographic key provided by the CreditorAgent to confirm that settlement on the creditor's account is guaranteed.

Datatype: SHA256SignatureText on page 200

1.4.3.16 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

Usage: The instructing agent is the party sending the status message and not the party that sent the original instruction that is being reported on.

InstructingAgent <InstgAgt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.17 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

Usage: The instructed agent is the party receiving the status message and not the party that received the original instruction that is being reported on.

InstructedAgent <InstdAgt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18 OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Key elements used to identify the original transaction that is being referred to.

OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef> contains the following
OriginalTransactionReference42 elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		InterbankSettlementAmount *<IntrBkSttlmAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount	✓C1, ✓C7	38
		Amount *<Amt>*	[0..1]	±		39
		InterbankSettlementDate *<IntrBkSttlmDt>*	[0..1]	Date		39
		RequestedCollectionDate *<ReqdColltnDt>*	[0..1]	Date		39
		RequestedExecutionDate *<ReqdExctnDt>*	[0..1]	±		39
		CreditorSchemeIdentification *<CdtrSchmeId>*	[0..1]	±		40
		SettlementInformation *<SttlmInf>*	[0..1]		✓C15, ✓C16, ✓C22, ✓C23, ✓C24, ✓C25, ✓C30, ✓C31	41
		SettlementMethod *<SttlmMtd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		44
		SettlementAccount *<SttlmAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	44
		ClearingSystem *<ClrSys>*	[0..1]			45
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		45
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		45
		InstructingReimbursementAgent *<InstgRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		45
		InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount *<InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	46
		InstructedReimbursementAgent *<InstdRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		47
		InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount *<InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	48
		ThirdReimbursementAgent *<ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		48
		ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount *<ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	49
		PaymentTypeInformation *<PmtTpInf>*	[0..1]	±		50
		PaymentMethod *<PmtMtd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		50
		MandateRelatedInformation *<MndtRltdInf>*	[0..1]			51
	{Or	**DirectDebitMandate** *<DrctDbtMndt>*	[0..1]		✓C2, ✓C3	53
		MandateIdentification *<MndtId>*	[0..1]	Text		55

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		DateOfSignature <*DtOfSgntr*>	[0..1]	Date		55
		AmendmentIndicator <*AmdmntInd*>	[0..1]	Indicator		55
		AmendmentInformationDetails <*AmdmntInfDtls*>	[0..1]			55
		OriginalMandateIdentification <*OrgnlMndtId*>	[0..1]	Text		56
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <*OrgnlCdtrSchmeId*>	[0..1]	±		56
		OriginalCreditorAgent <*OrgnlCdtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		57
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <*OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	58
		OriginalDebtor <*OrgnlDbtr*>	[0..1]	±		59
		OriginalDebtorAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	60
		OriginalDebtorAgent <*OrgnlDbtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		61
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	62
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate <*OrgnlFnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		63
		OriginalFrequency <*OrgnlFrqcy*>	[0..1]	±		63
		OriginalReason <*OrgnlRsn*>	[0..1]			63
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		64
		OriginalTrackingDays <*OrgnlTrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		64
		ElectronicSignature <*ElctrncSgntr*>	[0..1]	Text		64
		FirstCollectionDate <*FrstColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		64
		FinalCollectionDate <*FnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		64
		Frequency <*Frqcy*>	[0..1]	±		64
		Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]			65
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		65
		TrackingDays <*TrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		65
	Or}	**CreditTransferMandate** <*CdtTrfMndt*>	[0..1]	±		65
		RemittanceInformation <*RmtInf*>	[0..1]	±		66
		UltimateDebtor <*UltmtDbtr*>	[0..1]			66
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		66

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		67
		Debtor <*Dbtr*>	[0..1]			68
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		68
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		69
		DebtorAccount <*DbtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	70
		DebtorAgent <*DbtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		71
		DebtorAgentAccount <*DbtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	71
		CreditorAgent <*CdtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		72
		CreditorAgentAccount <*CdtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	73
		Creditor <*Cdtr*>	[0..1]			74
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		74
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		75
		CreditorAccount <*CdtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	76
		UltimateCreditor <*UltmtCdtr*>	[0..1]			77
	{Or	**Party** <*Pty*>	[1..1]	±		77
	Or}	**Agent** <*Agt*>	[1..1]	±		78
		Purpose <*Purp*>	[0..1]	±		79

1.4.3.18.1 InterbankSettlementAmount <IntrBkSttlmAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money moved between the instructing agent and the instructed agent.

Impacted by: ✓C1 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency ✓, ✓C7 CurrencyAmount ✓

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* D00006

– *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

• **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* D00007

– *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

1.4.3.18.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Amount <Amt> contains one of the following elements (see <u>AmountType4Choice on page 86</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	InstructedAmount *<InstdAmt>*	[1..1]	Amount		86
	Or}	EquivalentAmount *<EqvtAmt>*	[1..1]			86
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		86
		CurrencyOfTransfer *<CcyOfTrf>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		86

1.4.3.18.3 InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the amount of money ceases to be available to the agent that owes it and when the amount of money becomes available to the agent to which it is due.

Datatype: <u>ISODate on page 193</u>

1.4.3.18.4 RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the creditor requests that the amount of money is to be collected from the debtor.

Datatype: <u>ISODate on page 193</u>

1.4.3.18.5 RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date at which the initiating party requests the clearing agent to process the payment.

Usage: This is the date on which the debtor's account is to be debited. If payment by cheque, the date when the cheque must be generated by the bank.

RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt> contains one of the following elements (see DateAndDateTime2Choice on page 87 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Date *<Dt>*	[1..1]	Date		87
	Or}	DateTime *<DtTm>*	[1..1]	DateTime		87

1.4.3.18.6 CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeId> contains the following elements (see
for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		115

1.4.3.18.7 SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the details on how the settlement of the original transaction(s) between the instructing agent and the instructed agent was completed.

Impacted by: ✓C15 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓, ✓C16 InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓, ✓C22 SettlementMethodAgentRule ✓, ✓C23 SettlementMethodClearingRule ✓, ✓C24 SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule ✓, ✓C25 SettlementMethodCoverRule ✓, ✓C30 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓, ✓C31 ThirdReimbursementAgentRule ✓

SettlementInformation <SttlmInf> contains the following **SettlementInstruction15** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		SettlementMethod *<SttlmMtd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		44
		SettlementAccount *<SttlmAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	44
		ClearingSystem *<ClrSys>*	[0..1]			45
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		45
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		45
		InstructingReimbursementAgent *<InstgRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		45
		InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount *<InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	46
		InstructedReimbursementAgent *<InstdRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		47
		InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount *<InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	48
		ThirdReimbursementAgent *<ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>*	[0..1]	±		48
		ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount *<ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	49

Constraints

- **InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

  If InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructedReimbursementAgent must be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00037

  – *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructed reimbursement agent account.

- **InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

  If InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00038

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructing reimbursement agent account.

- **SettlementMethodAgentRule**

  If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ReimbursementAgent(s) and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00018

  – *Error Text:* Invalid message content for settlement method INGA or INDA.

- **SettlementMethodClearingRule**

  If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then SettlementAccount and ReimbursementAgent(s) are not allowed.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00019

  – *Error Text:* Invalid message content for settlement method CLRG.

- **SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule**

  If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then InstructedReimbursementAgent or InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00076

  – *Error Text:* Invalid message content for cover settlement method and reimbursement agents.

- **SettlementMethodCoverRule**

  If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then SettlementAccount and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00075

  – *Error Text:* Invalid message content for cover settlement method with settlement account and clearing system.

- **ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

  If ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then ThirdReimbursementAgent must be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00039

  – *Error Text:* Invalid message content for third reimbursement agent account.

- **ThirdReimbursementAgentRule**

  If ThirdReimbursementAgent is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent and InstructedReimbursementAgent must both be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00040

  – *Error Text:* Invalid message content for third reimbursement agent.

1.4.3.18.7.1 SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Method used to settle the (batch of) payment instructions.

Datatype: SettlementMethod1Code on page 190

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
COVE	CoverMethod	Settlement is done through a cover payment.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

1.4.3.18.7.2 SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: A specific purpose account used to post debit and credit entries as a result of the transaction.

Impacted by: ✓C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct> contains the following elements (see CashAccount40 on page 81 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	±		81
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency <*Ccy*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy <*Prxy*>	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00498

  – *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.18.7.3 ClearingSystem <ClrSys>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

ClearingSystem <ClrSys> contains one of the following **ClearingSystemIdentification3Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		45
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		45

1.4.3.18.7.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Infrastructure through which the payment instruction is processed, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

Datatype: ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code on page 170

1.4.3.18.7.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Clearing system identification in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.3.18.7.4 InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent through which the instructing agent will reimburse the instructed agent.

Usage: If InstructingAgent and InstructedAgent have the same reimbursement agent, then only InstructingReimbursementAgent must be used.

InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18.7.5 InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the instructing reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: ✓C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see CashAccount40 on page 81 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		81
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00498

– *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.18.7.6 InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent at which the instructed agent will be reimbursed.

Usage: If InstructedReimbursementAgent contains a branch of the InstructedAgent, then the party in InstructedAgent will claim reimbursement from that branch/will be paid by that branch.

Usage: If InstructingAgent and InstructedAgent have the same reimbursement agent, then only InstructingReimbursementAgent must be used.

InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18.7.7 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the instructed reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: ✓C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see CashAccount40 on page 81 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		81
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00498

  – *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.18.7.8 ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent at which the instructed agent will be reimbursed.

Usage: If ThirdReimbursementAgent contains a branch of the InstructedAgent, then the party in InstructedAgent will claim reimbursement from that branch/will be paid by that branch.

ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			93
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbId>	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		94
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			96
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18.7.9 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the third reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: ✓C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see CashAccount40 on page 81 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		81
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00498

  – *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.18.8 PaymentTypeInformation <PmtTpInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to further specify the type of transaction.

PaymentTypeInformation <PmtTpInf> contains the following elements (see PaymentTypeInformation27 on page 116 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		InstructionPriority <*InstrPrty*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		116
		ClearingChannel <*ClrChanl*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		116
		ServiceLevel <*SvcLvl*>	[0..*]			117
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		117
		LocalInstrument <*LclInstrm*>	[0..1]			117
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		118
		SequenceType <*SeqTp*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		118
		CategoryPurpose <*CtgyPurp*>	[0..1]			118
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		118

1.4.3.18.9 PaymentMethod <PmtMtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the means of payment that will be used to move the amount of money.

Datatype: PaymentMethod4Code on page 187

CodeName	Name	Definition
CHK	Cheque	Written order to a bank to pay a certain amount of money from one person to another person.
TRF	CreditTransfer	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer.
DD	DirectDebit	Collection of an amount of money from the debtor's bank account by the creditor. The amount of money and dates of collections may vary.
TRA	TransferAdvice	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer. An advice should be sent back to the account owner.

1.4.3.18.10 MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details of the mandate signed between the creditor and the debtor.

MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf> contains one of the following
MandateRelatedData3Choice elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**DirectDebitMandate** *<DrctDbtMndt>*	[0..1]		✓C2, ✓C3	53
		MandateIdentification *<MndtId>*	[0..1]	Text		55
		DateOfSignature *<DtOfSgntr>*	[0..1]	Date		55
		AmendmentIndicator *<AmdmntInd>*	[0..1]	Indicator		55
		AmendmentInformationDetails *<AmdmntInfDtls>*	[0..1]			55
		OriginalMandateIdentification *<OrgnlMndtId>*	[0..1]	Text		56
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification *<OrgnlCdtrSchmeId>*	[0..1]	±		56
		OriginalCreditorAgent *<OrgnlCdtrAgt>*	[0..1]	±		57
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount *<OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	58
		OriginalDebtor *<OrgnlDbtr>*	[0..1]	±		59
		OriginalDebtorAccount *<OrgnlDbtrAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	60
		OriginalDebtorAgent *<OrgnlDbtrAgt>*	[0..1]	±		61
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount *<OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	62
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate *<OrgnlFnlColltnDt>*	[0..1]	Date		63
		OriginalFrequency *<OrgnlFrqcy>*	[0..1]	±		63
		OriginalReason *<OrgnlRsn>*	[0..1]			63
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		64
		OriginalTrackingDays *<OrgnlTrckgDays>*	[0..1]	Text		64
		ElectronicSignature *<ElctrncSgntr>*	[0..1]	Text		64
		FirstCollectionDate *<FrstColltnDt>*	[0..1]	Date		64
		FinalCollectionDate *<FnlColltnDt>*	[0..1]	Date		64
		Frequency *<Frqcy>*	[0..1]	±		64
		Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]			65
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		65
		TrackingDays *<TrckgDays>*	[0..1]	Text		65
	Or}	**CreditTransferMandate** *<CdtTrfMndt>*	[0..1]	±		65

1.4.3.18.10.1 DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specific direct debit mandate data.

Impacted by: ✓C2 AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule ✓, ✓C3 AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule ✓

DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt> contains the following **MandateRelatedInformation16** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		MandateIdentification <*MndtId*>	[0..1]	Text		55
		DateOfSignature <*DtOfSgntr*>	[0..1]	Date		55
		AmendmentIndicator <*AmdmntInd*>	[0..1]	Indicator		55
		AmendmentInformationDetails <*AmdmntInfDtls*>	[0..1]			55
		OriginalMandateIdentification <*OrgnlMndtId*>	[0..1]	Text		56
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <*OrgnlCdtrSchmeId*>	[0..1]	±		56
		OriginalCreditorAgent <*OrgnlCdtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		57
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <*OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	58
		OriginalDebtor <*OrgnlDbtr*>	[0..1]	±		59
		OriginalDebtorAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	60
		OriginalDebtorAgent <*OrgnlDbtrAgt*>	[0..1]	±		61
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <*OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct*>	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	62
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate <*OrgnlFnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		63
		OriginalFrequency <*OrgnlFrqcy*>	[0..1]	±		63
		OriginalReason <*OrgnlRsn*>	[0..1]			63
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		64
		OriginalTrackingDays <*OrgnlTrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		64
		ElectronicSignature <*ElctrncSgntr*>	[0..1]	Text		64
		FirstCollectionDate <*FrstColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		64
		FinalCollectionDate <*FnlColltnDt*>	[0..1]	Date		64
		Frequency <*Frqcy*>	[0..1]	±		64
		Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]			65
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		65
		TrackingDays <*TrckgDays*>	[0..1]	Text		65

Constraints

- **AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule**

If AmendmentIndicator is false, then AmendmentInformationDetails is not allowed.

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00013

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for false amendment indicator and details.

• **AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule**

If AmendmentIndicator is true, then AmendmentInformationDetails must be present.

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00012

– *Error Text:* Invalid message content for true amendment indicator and details.

1.4.3.18.10.1.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.3.18.10.1.2 DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the direct debit mandate has been signed by the debtor.

Datatype: ISODate on page 193

1.4.3.18.10.1.3 AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicator notifying whether the underlying mandate is amended or not.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see TrueFalseIndicator on page 196):

• *Meaning When True:* True

• *Meaning When False:* False

1.4.3.18.10.1.4 AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: List of mandate elements that have been modified.

AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls> contains the following **AmendmentInformationDetails15** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		OriginalMandateIdentification *<OrgnlMndtId>*	[0..1]	Text		56
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification *<OrgnlCdtrSchmeId>*	[0..1]	±		56
		OriginalCreditorAgent *<OrgnlCdtrAgt>*	[0..1]	±		57
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount *<OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	58
		OriginalDebtor *<OrgnlDbtr>*	[0..1]	±		59
		OriginalDebtorAccount *<OrgnlDbtrAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	60
		OriginalDebtorAgent *<OrgnlDbtrAgt>*	[0..1]	±		61
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount *<OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>*	[0..1]	±	✓C14, C13	62
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate *<OrgnlFnlColltnDt>*	[0..1]	Date		63
		OriginalFrequency *<OrgnlFrqcy>*	[0..1]	±		63
		OriginalReason *<OrgnlRsn>*	[0..1]			63
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		64
		OriginalTrackingDays *<OrgnlTrckgDays>*	[0..1]	Text		64

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.1 OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.2 OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original creditor scheme identification that has been modified.

OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeId> contains the following elements (see <u>PartyIdentification272 on page 107</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		115

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.3 OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original creditor agent that has been modified.

OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.4 OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original creditor agent account that has been modified.

Impacted by: ✓C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see CashAccount40 on page 81 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		81
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00498

  – *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.5 OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor that has been modified.

OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr> contains the following elements (see PartyIdentification272 on page 107 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		115

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.6 OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor account that has been modified.

Impacted by: ✓C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see <u>CashAccount40 on page 81</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		81
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00498

  – *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.7 OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor agent that has been modified.

OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt> contains the following elements (see
BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			93
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbId>	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		94
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			96
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.8 OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor agent account that has been modified.

Impacted by: ✓C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see
CashAccount40 on page 81 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		81
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00498

  – *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.9 OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original final collection date that has been modified.

Datatype: <u>ISODate on page 193</u>

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.10 OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original frequency that has been modified.

OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy> contains one of the following elements (see <u>Frequency36Choice on page 97</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	Or	Period <*Prd*>	[1..1]			98
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
		CountPerPeriod <*CntPerPrd*>	[1..1]	Quantity		99
	Or}	PointInTime <*PtInTm*>	[1..1]			99
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
		PointInTime <*PtInTm*>	[1..1]	Text		100

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.11 OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original reason for the mandate to allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn> contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**Code** *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		64
	Or}	**Proprietary** *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		64

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.11.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code on page 178

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max70Text on page 199

1.4.3.18.10.1.4.12 OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original number of tracking days that has been modified.

Datatype: Exact2NumericText on page 197

1.4.3.18.10.1.5 ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Additional security provisions, such as a digital signature, as provided by the debtor.

Datatype: Max1025Text on page 197

1.4.3.18.10.1.6 FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the first collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: ISODate on page 193

1.4.3.18.10.1.7 FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the final collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: ISODate on page 193

1.4.3.18.10.1.8 Frequency <Frqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Regularity with which direct debit instructions are to be created and processed.

Frequency <Frqcy> contains one of the following elements (see <u>Frequency36Choice on page 97</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	Or	Period <*Prd*>	[1..1]			98
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
		CountPerPeriod <*CntPerPrd*>	[1..1]	Quantity		99
	Or}	PointInTime <*PtInTm*>	[1..1]			99
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
		PointInTime <*PtInTm*>	[1..1]	Text		100

1.4.3.18.10.1.9 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reason for the direct debit mandate to allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**Code** <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		65
	Or}	**Proprietary** <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		65

1.4.3.18.10.1.9.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: <u>ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code on page 178</u>

1.4.3.18.10.1.9.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: <u>Max70Text on page 199</u>

1.4.3.18.10.1.10 TrackingDays <TrckgDays>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the number of days the direct debit instruction must be tracked.

Datatype: <u>Exact2NumericText on page 197</u>

1.4.3.18.10.2 CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specific credit transfer mandate data.

CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt> contains the following elements (see CreditTransferMandateData1 on page 88 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		MandateIdentification *<MndtId>*	[0..1]	Text		88
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		88
		DateOfSignature *<DtOfSgntr>*	[0..1]	Date		89
		DateOfVerification *<DtOfVrfctn>*	[0..1]	DateTime		89
		ElectronicSignature *<ElctrncSgntr>*	[0..1]	Binary		89
		FirstPaymentDate *<FrstPmtDt>*	[0..1]	Date		89
		FinalPaymentDate *<FnlPmtDt>*	[0..1]	Date		89
		Frequency *<Frqcy>*	[0..1]	±		90
		Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]			90
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		90
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		90

1.4.3.18.11 RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching of an entry with the items that the transfer is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

RemittanceInformation <RmtInf> contains the following elements (see RemittanceInformation22 on page 126 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Unstructured *<Ustrd>*	[0..*]	Text		126
		Structured *<Strd>*	[0..*]	±		126

1.4.3.18.12 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains one of the following **Party50Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**Party** *<Pty>*	[1..1]	±		66
	Or}	**Agent** *<Agt>*	[1..1]	±		67

1.4.3.18.12.1 Party <Pty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a person or an organisation.

Party <Pty> contains the following elements (see <u>PartyIdentification272 on page 107</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification *<OrgId>*	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC *<AnyBIC>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..*]			111
		Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification *<PrvtId>*	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth *<DtAndPlcOfBirth>*	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate *<BirthDt>*	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth *<PrvcOfBirth>*	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth *<CityOfBirth>*	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth *<CtryOfBirth>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..*]			114
		Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence *<CtryOfRes>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails *<CtctDtls>*	[0..1]	±		115

1.4.3.18.12.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a financial institution.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see <u>BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18.13 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains one of the following **Party50Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**Party** *<Pty>*	[1..1]	±		68
	Or}	**Agent** *<Agt>*	[1..1]	±		69

1.4.3.18.13.1 Party <Pty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a person or an organisation.

Party <Pty> contains the following elements (see <u>PartyIdentification272 on page 107</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		115

1.4.3.18.13.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a financial institution.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			93
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbId>	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		94
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			96
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18.14 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

Impacted by: ✓C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see CashAccount40 on page 81 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		81
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00498

  – *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.18.15 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <*FinInstnId*>	[1..1]			93
		BICFI <*BICFI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <*ClrSysMmbId*>	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		94
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification <*BrnchId*>	[0..1]			96
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18.16 DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor agent at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: ✓C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see <u>CashAccount40 on page 81</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		81
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00498

  – *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.18.17 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18.18 CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor agent at its servicing agent to which a credit entry will be made as a result of the payment transaction.

Impacted by: ✓C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see CashAccount40 on page 81 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		81
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00498

  – *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.18.19 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party to which an amount of money is due.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains one of the following **Party50Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**Party** *<Pty>*	[1..1]	±		74
	Or}	**Agent** *<Agt>*	[1..1]	±		75

1.4.3.18.19.1 Party <Pty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a person or an organisation.

Party <Pty> contains the following elements (see PartyIdentification272 on page 107 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		115

1.4.3.18.19.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a financial institution.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18.20 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

Impacted by: ✓C14 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C13 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct> contains the following elements (see CashAccount40 on page 81 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		81
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* X00498

– *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.18.21 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr> contains one of the following **Party50Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	**Party** *<Pty>*	[1..1]	±		77
	Or}	**Agent** *<Agt>*	[1..1]	±		78

1.4.3.18.21.1 Party <Pty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a person or an organisation.

Party <Pty> contains the following elements (see PartyIdentification272 on page 107 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		115

1.4.3.18.21.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a financial institution.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see <u>BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8 on page 92</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification *<FinInstnId>*	[1..1]			93
		BICFI *<BICFI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification *<ClrSysMmbId>*	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		94
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification *<BrnchId>*	[0..1]			96
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI *<LEI>*	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress *<PstlAdr>*	[0..1]	±		96

1.4.3.18.22 Purpose <Purp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage:

Purpose is used by the end customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Purpose <Purp> contains one of the following elements (see <u>Purpose2Choice on page 105</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		105
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		106

1.4.3.19 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: <u>C29 SupplementaryDataRule</u>

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see <u>SupplementaryData1 on page 105</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		PlaceAndName *<PlcAndNm>*	[0..1]	Text		105
		Envelope *<Envlp>*	[1..1]	(External Schema)		105

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

  This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

1.4.4   SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: <u>C29 SupplementaryDataRule</u>

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see <u>SupplementaryData1 on page 105</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		PlaceAndName *<PlcAndNm>*	[0..1]	Text		105
		Envelope *<Envlp>*	[1..1]	(External Schema)		105

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

  This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

2   Message Items Types

2.1   MessageComponents

2.1.1   Account

2.1.1.1 CashAccount40

Definition: Provides the details to identify an account.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	±		81
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		82
		Currency *<Ccy>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		82
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		82
		Proxy *<Prxy>*	[0..1]	±		82

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

  If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

  Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* X00498

  – *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

2.1.1.1.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following elements (see AccountIdentification4Choice on page 85 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	IBAN *<IBAN>*	[1..1]	IdentifierSet		85
	Or}	Other *<Othr>*	[1..1]	±		85

2.1.1.1.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following elements (see CashAccountType2Choice on page 83 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		84

2.1.1.1.3 Currency <Ccy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Usage: Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode on page 166

2.1.1.1.4 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

Usage: The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

Datatype: Max70Text on page 199

2.1.1.1.5 Proxy <Prxy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies an alternate assumed name for the identification of the account.

Proxy <Prxy> contains the following elements (see ProxyAccountIdentification1 on page 83 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			83
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		83
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		83

2.1.1.2 ProxyAccountIdentification1

Definition: Information related to a proxy identification of the account.

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			83
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		83
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		83

2.1.1.2.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of the proxy identification.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **ProxyAccountType1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		83

2.1.1.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: ExternalProxyAccountType1Code on page 181

2.1.1.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.1.2.2 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification used to indicate the account identification under another specified name.

Datatype: Max2048Text on page 198

2.1.1.3 CashAccountType2Choice

Definition: Nature or use of the account.

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		84

2.1.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Account type, in a coded form.

Datatype: ExternalCashAccountType1Code on page 170

2.1.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.1.4 GenericAccountIdentification1

Definition: Information related to a generic account identification.

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		84
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			84
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		85
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		85

2.1.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: Max34Text on page 199

2.1.1.4.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **AccountSchemeName1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		85

2.1.1.4.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: ExternalAccountIdentification1Code on page 169

2.1.1.4.2.2 Proprietary *<Prtry>*

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.1.4.3 Issuer *<Issr>*

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.2　　Account Identification

2.1.2.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

Definition: Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	IBAN *<IBAN>*	[1..1]	IdentifierSet		85
	Or}	Other *<Othr>*	[1..1]	±		85

2.1.2.1.1 IBAN *<IBAN>*

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

Datatype: IBAN2007Identifier on page 195

2.1.2.1.2 Other *<Othr>*

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following elements (see GenericAccountIdentification1 on page 84 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		84
		SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			84
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		84
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		85
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		85

2.1.3   Amount

2.1.3.1 AmountType4Choice

Definition: Specifies the amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	InstructedAmount *<InstdAmt>*	[1..1]	Amount		86
	Or}	EquivalentAmount *<EqvtAmt>*	[1..1]			86
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		86
		CurrencyOfTransfer *<CcyOfTrf>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		86

2.1.3.1.1 InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Usage: This amount has to be transported unchanged through the transaction chain.

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165

2.1.3.1.2 EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, expressed in the currency of the debtor's account, and the currency in which the amount is to be moved.

EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt> contains the following **EquivalentAmount2** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		86
		CurrencyOfTransfer *<CcyOfTrf>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		86

2.1.3.1.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency of the debtor's account, and to be moved in a different currency.

Usage: The first agent will convert the equivalent amount into the amount to be moved.

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165

2.1.3.1.2.2 CurrencyOfTransfer <CcyOfTrf>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the currency of the to be transferred amount, which is different from the currency of the debtor's account.

Datatype: <u>ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode on page 166</u>

2.1.4　　Date Period

2.1.4.1　DatePeriod2

Definition: Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FromDate *<FrDt>*	[1..1]	Date		87
		ToDate *<ToDt>*	[1..1]	Date		87

2.1.4.1.1　FromDate <FrDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Start date of the range.

Datatype: <u>ISODate on page 193</u>

2.1.4.1.2　ToDate <ToDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: End date of the range.

Datatype: <u>ISODate on page 193</u>

2.1.5　　Date Time

2.1.5.1　DateAndDateTime2Choice

Definition: Choice between a date or a date and time format.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Date *<Dt>*	[1..1]	Date		87
	Or}	DateTime *<DtTm>*	[1..1]	DateTime		87

2.1.5.1.1　Date <Dt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specified date.

Datatype: <u>ISODate on page 193</u>

2.1.5.1.2　DateTime <DtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specified date and time.

Datatype: <u>ISODateTime on page 193</u>

2.1.6   Direct Debit

2.1.6.1 CreditTransferMandateData1

Definition: Provides further details related to a credit transfer mandate signed between the creditor and the debtor.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		MandateIdentification *<MndtId>*	[0..1]	Text		88
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	±		88
		DateOfSignature *<DtOfSgntr>*	[0..1]	Date		89
		DateOfVerification *<DtOfVrfctn>*	[0..1]	DateTime		89
		ElectronicSignature *<ElctrncSgntr>*	[0..1]	Binary		89
		FirstPaymentDate *<FrstPmtDt>*	[0..1]	Date		89
		FinalPaymentDate *<FnlPmtDt>*	[0..1]	Date		89
		Frequency *<Frqcy>*	[0..1]	±		90
		Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]			90
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		90
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		90

2.1.6.1.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.6.1.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

Type <Tp> contains the following elements (see MandateTypeInformation2 on page 102 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			102
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		103
		LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			103
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		103
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		103
		CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			103
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		103
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		104
		Classification <Clssfctn>	[0..1]	±		104

2.1.6.1.3 DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the credit transfer mandate has been signed by the debtor.

Datatype: ISODate on page 193

2.1.6.1.4 DateOfVerification <DtOfVrfctn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the credit transfer mandate has been verified.

Datatype: ISODateTime on page 193

2.1.6.1.5 ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Additional security provisions, such as a digital signature, as provided by the debtor.

Datatype: Max10KBinary on page 166

2.1.6.1.6 FirstPaymentDate <FrstPmtDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the first payment of a recurrent credit transfer as per the mandate.

Datatype: ISODate on page 193

2.1.6.1.7 FinalPaymentDate <FnlPmtDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the final payment of a recurrent credit transfer as per the mandate.

Datatype: ISODate on page 193

2.1.6.1.8 Frequency <Frqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Regularity with which credit transfer instructions are to be created and processed.

Frequency <Frqcy> contains one of the following elements (see <u>Frequency36Choice on page 97</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	Or	Period <*Prd*>	[1..1]			98
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
		CountPerPeriod <*CntPerPrd*>	[1..1]	Quantity		99
	Or}	PointInTime <*PtInTm*>	[1..1]			99
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
		PointInTime <*PtInTm*>	[1..1]	Text		100

2.1.6.1.9 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reason for the setup of the credit transfer mandate.

Usage:

The reason will allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		90
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		90

2.1.6.1.9.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: <u>ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code on page 178</u>

2.1.6.1.9.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: <u>Max70Text on page 199</u>

2.1.7 Financial Institution Identification

2.1.7.1 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify a member of the clearing system.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ClearingSystemIdentification *<ClrSysId>*	[0..1]	±		91
		MemberIdentification *<MmbId>*	[1..1]	Text		91

2.1.7.1.1 ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId> contains one of the following elements (see ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice on page 162 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		163

2.1.7.1.2 MemberIdentification <MmbId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a member of a clearing system.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.7.2 GenericFinancialIdentification1

Definition: Information related to an identification of a financial institution.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		91
		SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			92
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		92
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		92

2.1.7.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.7.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following
FinancialIdentificationSchemeName1Choice elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		92

2.1.7.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code on page 176

2.1.7.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.7.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.7.3 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <*FinInstnId*>	[1..1]			93
		BICFI <*BICFI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <*ClrSysMmbId*>	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		94
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..1]	±		95
		BranchIdentification <*BrnchId*>	[0..1]			96
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		96

2.1.7.3.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.

FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId> contains the following **FinancialInstitutionIdentification23** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		BICFI <*BICFI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		93
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <*ClrSysMmbId*>	[0..1]	±		94
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		94
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		94
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		94
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..1]	±		95

2.1.7.3.1.1 BICFI <BICFI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Datatype: BICFIDec2014Identifier on page 194

2.1.7.3.1.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbId> contains the following elements (see ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2 on page 91 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ClearingSystemIdentification <*ClrSysId*>	[0..1]	±		91
		MemberIdentification <*MmbId*>	[1..1]	Text		91

2.1.7.3.1.3 LEI <LEI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal entity identifier of the financial institution.

Datatype: LEIIdentifier on page 195

2.1.7.3.1.4 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.7.3.1.5 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		AddressType *<AdrTp>*	[0..1]			122
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	±		123
		CareOf *<CareOf>*	[0..1]	Text		123
		Department *<Dept>*	[0..1]	Text		123
		SubDepartment *<SubDept>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		StreetName *<StrtNm>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		BuildingNumber *<BldgNb>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		BuildingName *<BldgNm>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		Floor *<Flr>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		UnitNumber *<UnitNb>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		PostBox *<PstBx>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		Room *<Room>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		PostCode *<PstCd>*	[0..1]	Text		125
		TownName *<TwnNm>*	[0..1]	Text		125
		TownLocationName *<TwnLctnNm>*	[0..1]	Text		125
		DistrictName *<DstrctNm>*	[0..1]	Text		125
		CountrySubDivision *<CtrySubDvsn>*	[0..1]	Text		125
		Country *<Ctry>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
		AddressLine *<AdrLine>*	[0..7]	Text		125

2.1.7.3.1.6 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following elements (see GenericFinancialIdentification1 on page 91 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		91
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			92
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		92
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		92
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		92

2.1.7.3.2 BranchIdentification <BrnchId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Usage: This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

BranchIdentification <BrnchId> contains the following **BranchData5** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		96
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		96
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		96
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		96

2.1.7.3.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.7.3.2.2 LEI <LEI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal entity identification for the branch of the financial institution.

Datatype: LEIIdentifier on page 195

2.1.7.3.2.3 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.7.3.2.4 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see <u>PostalAddress27 on page 122</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		AddressType <*AdrTp*>	[0..1]			122
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	±		123
		CareOf <*CareOf*>	[0..1]	Text		123
		Department <*Dept*>	[0..1]	Text		123
		SubDepartment <*SubDept*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		StreetName <*StrtNm*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		BuildingNumber <*BldgNb*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		BuildingName <*BldgNm*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		Floor <*Flr*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		UnitNumber <*UnitNb*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		PostBox <*PstBx*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		Room <*Room*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		PostCode <*PstCd*>	[0..1]	Text		125
		TownName <*TwnNm*>	[0..1]	Text		125
		TownLocationName <*TwnLctnNm*>	[0..1]	Text		125
		DistrictName <*DstrctNm*>	[0..1]	Text		125
		CountrySubDivision <*CtrySubDvsn*>	[0..1]	Text		125
		Country <*Ctry*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
		AddressLine <*AdrLine*>	[0..7]	Text		125

2.1.8 Frequency

2.1.8.1 Frequency36Choice

Definition: Choice of format for a frequency, for example, the frequency of payment.

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		98
	Or	Period <*Prd*>	[1..1]			98
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
		CountPerPeriod <*CntPerPrd*>	[1..1]	Quantity		99
	Or}	PointInTime <*PtInTm*>	[1..1]			99
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
		PointInTime <*PtInTm*>	[1..1]	Text		100

2.1.8.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a frequency in terms of a specified period type.

Datatype: Frequency6Code on page 184

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

2.1.8.1.2 Period <Prd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a frequency in terms of a count per period within a specified period type.

Period <Prd> contains the following **FrequencyPeriod1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
		CountPerPeriod <*CntPerPrd*>	[1..1]	Quantity		99

2.1.8.1.2.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Period for which the number of instructions are to be created and processed.

Datatype: Frequency6Code on page 184

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

2.1.8.1.2.2 CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Number of instructions to be created and processed during the specified period.

Datatype: DecimalNumber on page 196

2.1.8.1.3 PointInTime <PtInTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a frequency in terms of an exact point in time or moment within a specified period type.

PointInTime <PtInTm> contains the following **FrequencyAndMoment1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		99
		PointInTime <*PtInTm*>	[1..1]	Text		100

2.1.8.1.3.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Period for which the number of instructions are to be created and processed.

Datatype: Frequency6Code on page 184

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

2.1.8.1.3.2 PointInTime <PtInTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Further information on the exact point in time the event should take place.

Datatype: Exact2NumericText on page 197

2.1.9 Identification Information

2.1.9.1 GenericIdentification30

Definition: Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		100
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[1..1]	Text		100
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]	Text		101

2.1.9.1.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

Datatype: Exact4AlphaNumericText on page 197

2.1.9.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.9.1.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Short textual description of the scheme.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.9.2 GenericIdentification3

Definition: Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		101
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		101

2.1.9.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name or number assigned by an entity to enable recognition of that entity, for example, account identifier.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.9.2.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.10 Mandate

2.1.10.1 MandateClassification1Choice

Definition: Specifies the high level purpose of the instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories.

Usage: This is used by the initiating party to provide information concerning the processing of the payment. It is likely to trigger special processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		101
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		102

2.1.10.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

Datatype: MandateClassification1Code on page 185

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.

2.1.10.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: <u>Max35Text on page 199</u>

2.1.10.2 MandateTypeInformation2

Definition: Set of elements used to further detail the information related to the type of payment.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ServiceLevel *<SvcLvl>*	[0..1]			102
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		103
		LocalInstrument *<LclInstrm>*	[0..1]			103
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		103
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		103
		CategoryPurpose *<CtgyPurp>*	[0..1]			103
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		103
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		104
		Classification *<Clssfctn>*	[0..1]	±		104

2.1.10.2.1 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agreement under which or rules under which the mandate resides.

ServiceLevel <SvcLvl> contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		103

2.1.10.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

Datatype: ExternalServiceLevel1Code on page 183

2.1.10.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.10.2.2 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

LocalInstrument <LclInstrm> contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		103
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		103

2.1.10.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

Datatype: ExternalLocalInstrument1Code on page 177

2.1.10.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.10.2.3 CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the high level purpose of the mandate based on a set of pre-defined categories.

CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp> contains one of the following **CategoryPurpose1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		103
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		104

2.1.10.2.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

Datatype: ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code on page 171

2.1.10.2.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.10.2.4 Classification <Clssfctn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of direct debit instruction.

Classification <Clssfctn> contains one of the following elements (see MandateClassification1Choice on page 101 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		101
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		102

2.1.11 Miscellaneous

2.1.11.1 OriginalBusinessQuery1

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original requestor, to unambiguously identify the business query message.

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		MessageIdentification <*MsgId*>	[1..1]	Text		104
		MessageNameIdentification <*MsgNmId*>	[0..1]	Text		104
		CreationDateTime <*CreDtTm*>	[0..1]	DateTime		104

2.1.11.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original query message.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.11.1.2 MessageNameIdentification <MsgNmId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the query message name identifier to which the message refers.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.11.1.3 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: ISODateTime on page 193

2.1.11.2 SupplementaryData1

Definition: Additional information that can not be captured in the structured fields and/or any other specific block.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		PlaceAndName *<PlcAndNm>*	[0..1]	Text		105
		Envelope *<Envlp>*	[1..1]	(External Schema)		105

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

  This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

2.1.11.2.1 PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous reference to the location where the supplementary data must be inserted in the message instance.

In the case of XML, this is expressed by a valid XPath.

Datatype: Max350Text on page 199

2.1.11.2.2 Envelope <Envlp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical element wrapping the supplementary data.

Type: (External Schema)

Technical component that contains the validated supplementary data information. This technical envelope allows to segregate the supplementary data information from any other information.

2.1.11.3 Purpose2Choice

Definition: Specifies the underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage: Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		105
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		106

2.1.11.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Underlying reason for the payment transaction, as published in an external purpose code list.

Datatype: ExternalPurpose1Code on page 182

2.1.11.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.11.4 NumberOfTransactionsPerStatus5

Definition: Set of elements used to provide detailed information on the number of transactions that are reported with a specific transaction status.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		DetailedNumberOfTransactions *<DtldNbOfTxs>*	[1..1]	Text		106
		DetailedStatus *<DtldSts>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		106
		DetailedControlSum *<DtldCtrlSum>*	[0..1]	Quantity		106

2.1.11.4.1 DetailedNumberOfTransactions <DtldNbOfTxs>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Number of individual transactions contained in the message, detailed per status.

Datatype: Max15NumericText on page 198

2.1.11.4.2 DetailedStatus <DtldSts>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Common transaction status for all individual transactions reported.

Datatype: ExternalPaymentTransactionStatus1Code on page 180

2.1.11.4.3 DetailedControlSum <DtldCtrlSum>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total of all individual amounts included in the message, irrespective of currencies, detailed per status.

Datatype: DecimalNumber on page 196

2.1.11.5 OriginalGroupInformation29

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identifier of the group of transactions as assigned by the original instructing party.

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		OriginalMessageIdentification <*OrgnlMsgId*>	[1..1]	Text		107
		OriginalMessageNameIdentification <*OrgnlMsgNmId*>	[1..1]	Text		107
		OriginalCreationDateTime <*OrgnlCreDtTm*>	[0..1]	DateTime		107

2.1.11.5.1 OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference assigned by the original instructing party to unambiguously identify the original message.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.11.5.2 OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the original message name identifier to which the message refers, for example, pacs.003.001.01 or MT103.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.11.5.3 OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: ISODateTime on page 193

2.1.12   Party Identification

2.1.12.1 PartyIdentification272

Definition: Specifies the identification of a person or an organisation.

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		115

2.1.12.1.1 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.12.1.2 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see <u>PostalAddress27 on page 122</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		AddressType <*AdrTp*>	[0..1]			122
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	±		123
		CareOf <*CareOf*>	[0..1]	Text		123
		Department <*Dept*>	[0..1]	Text		123
		SubDepartment <*SubDept*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		StreetName <*StrtNm*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		BuildingNumber <*BldgNb*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		BuildingName <*BldgNm*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		Floor <*Flr*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		UnitNumber <*UnitNb*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		PostBox <*PstBx*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		Room <*Room*>	[0..1]	Text		124
		PostCode <*PstCd*>	[0..1]	Text		125
		TownName <*TwnNm*>	[0..1]	Text		125
		TownLocationName <*TwnLctnNm*>	[0..1]	Text		125
		DistrictName <*DstrctNm*>	[0..1]	Text		125
		CountrySubDivision <*CtrySubDvsn*>	[0..1]	Text		125
		Country <*Ctry*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
		AddressLine <*AdrLine*>	[0..7]	Text		125

2.1.12.1.3 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following **Party52Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115

2.1.12.1.3.1 OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

OrganisationIdentification <OrgId> contains the following **OrganisationIdentification39** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112

2.1.12.1.3.1.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Business identification code of the organisation.

Datatype: AnyBICDec2014Identifier on page 194

2.1.12.1.3.1.2 LEI <LEI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal entity identification as an alternate identification for a party.

Datatype: LEIIdentifier on page 195

2.1.12.1.3.1.3 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericOrganisationIdentification3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112

2.1.12.1.3.1.3.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: Max256Text on page 198

2.1.12.1.3.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		112

2.1.12.1.3.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code on page 179

2.1.12.1.3.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.12.1.3.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.12.1.3.2 PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, for example a passport.

PrivateIdentification <PrvtId> contains the following **PersonIdentification18** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115

2.1.12.1.3.2.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and place of birth of a person.

DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth> contains the following **DateAndPlaceOfBirth1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114

2.1.12.1.3.2.1.1 BirthDate <BirthDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date on which a person is born.

Datatype: ISODate on page 193

2.1.12.1.3.2.1.2 ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Province where a person was born.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.12.1.3.2.1.3 CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: City where a person was born.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.12.1.3.2.1.4 CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Country where a person was born.

Datatype: CountryCode on page 168

2.1.12.1.3.2.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericPersonIdentification2** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		115

2.1.12.1.3.2.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

Datatype: Max256Text on page 198

2.1.12.1.3.2.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **PersonIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		115

2.1.12.1.3.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: ExternalPersonIdentification1Code on page 181

2.1.12.1.3.2.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.12.1.3.2.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.12.1.4 CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.

Datatype: CountryCode on page 168

2.1.12.1.5 ContactDetails <CtctDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.

ContactDetails <CtctDtls> contains the following elements (see Contact13 on page 119 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		119
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		120
		PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		120
		MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		120
		FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		120
		URLAddress <URLAdr>	[0..1]	Text		120
		EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		120
		EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		120
		JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		120
		Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		121
		Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		121
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			121
		ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		121
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		121
		PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		121

2.1.13 Payment Type

2.1.13.1 PaymentTypeInformation27

Definition: Provides further details of the type of payment.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		InstructionPriority *<InstrPrty>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		116
		ClearingChannel *<ClrChanl>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		116
		ServiceLevel *<SvcLvl>*	[0..*]			117
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		117
		LocalInstrument *<LclInstrm>*	[0..1]			117
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		118
		SequenceType *<SeqTp>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		118
		CategoryPurpose *<CtgyPurp>*	[0..1]			118
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		118

2.1.13.1.1 InstructionPriority <InstrPrty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicator of the urgency or order of importance that the instructing party would like the instructed party to apply to the processing of the instruction.

Datatype: Priority2Code on page 189

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

2.1.13.1.2 ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the clearing channel to be used to process the payment instruction.

Datatype: ClearingChannel2Code on page 168

CodeName	Name	Definition
RTGS	RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.
RTNS	RealTimeNetSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MPNS	MassPaymentNetSystem	Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system.
BOOK	BookTransfer	Payment through internal book transfer.

2.1.13.1.3 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Agreement under which or rules under which the transaction should be processed.

ServiceLevel <SvcLvl> contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		117

2.1.13.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

Datatype: ExternalServiceLevel1Code on page 183

2.1.13.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.13.1.4 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

LocalInstrument <LclInstrm> contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		118

2.1.13.1.4.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

Datatype: ExternalLocalInstrument1Code on page 177

2.1.13.1.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.13.1.5 SequenceType <SeqTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the direct debit sequence, such as first, recurrent, final or one-off.

Datatype: SequenceType3Code on page 189

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRST	First	First collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
FNAL	Final	Final collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.
RPRE	Represented	Collection used to re-present previously reversed or returned direct debit transactions.

2.1.13.1.6 CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the high level purpose of the instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories.

Usage: This is used by the initiating party to provide information concerning the processing of the payment. It is likely to trigger special processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp> contains one of the following **CategoryPurpose1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		118
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		118

2.1.13.1.6.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

Datatype: ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code on page 171

2.1.13.1.6.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.14 Person Identification

2.1.14.1 Contact13

Definition: Specifies the details of the contact person.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		NamePrefix *<NmPrfx>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		119
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		120
		PhoneNumber *<PhneNb>*	[0..1]	Text		120
		MobileNumber *<MobNb>*	[0..1]	Text		120
		FaxNumber *<FaxNb>*	[0..1]	Text		120
		URLAddress *<URLAdr>*	[0..1]	Text		120
		EmailAddress *<EmailAdr>*	[0..1]	Text		120
		EmailPurpose *<EmailPurp>*	[0..1]	Text		120
		JobTitle *<JobTitl>*	[0..1]	Text		120
		Responsibility *<Rspnsblty>*	[0..1]	Text		121
		Department *<Dept>*	[0..1]	Text		121
		Other *<Othr>*	[0..*]			121
		ChannelType *<ChanlTp>*	[1..1]	Text		121
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		121
		PreferredMethod *<PrefrdMtd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		121

2.1.14.1.1 NamePrefix <NmPrfx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Datatype: NamePrefix2Code on page 186

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

2.1.14.1.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.14.1.3 PhoneNumber <PhneNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: PhoneNumber on page 200

2.1.14.1.4 MobileNumber <MobNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: PhoneNumber on page 200

2.1.14.1.5 FaxNumber <FaxNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: PhoneNumber on page 200

2.1.14.1.6 URLAddress <URLAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Address for the Universal Resource Locator (URL), for example an address used over the www (HTTP) service.

Datatype: Max2048Text on page 198

2.1.14.1.7 EmailAddress <EmailAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

Datatype: Max256Text on page 198

2.1.14.1.8 EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Purpose for which an email address may be used.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.14.1.9 JobTitle <JobTitl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Title of the function.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.14.1.10 Responsibility <Rspnsblty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Role of a person in an organisation.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.14.1.11 Department <Dept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: Max70Text on page 199

2.1.14.1.12 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Contact details in another form.

Other <Othr> contains the following **OtherContact1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ChannelType *<ChanlTp>*	[1..1]	Text		121
		Identification *<Id>*	[0..1]	Text		121

2.1.14.1.12.1 ChannelType <ChanlTp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Method used to contact the financial institution's contact for the specific tax region.

Datatype: Max4Text on page 199

2.1.14.1.12.2 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Communication value such as phone number or email address.

Datatype: Max128Text on page 197

2.1.14.1.13 PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Preferred method used to reach the contact.

Datatype: PreferredContactMethod2Code on page 188

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.

CodeName	Name	Definition
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.
ONLI	Online	Preferred method used to reach the contact is online.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.

2.1.15   Postal Address

2.1.15.1 PostalAddress27

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		AddressType *<AdrTp>*	[0..1]			122
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	±		123
		CareOf *<CareOf>*	[0..1]	Text		123
		Department *<Dept>*	[0..1]	Text		123
		SubDepartment *<SubDept>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		StreetName *<StrtNm>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		BuildingNumber *<BldgNb>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		BuildingName *<BldgNm>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		Floor *<Flr>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		UnitNumber *<UnitNb>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		PostBox *<PstBx>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		Room *<Room>*	[0..1]	Text		124
		PostCode *<PstCd>*	[0..1]	Text		125
		TownName *<TwnNm>*	[0..1]	Text		125
		TownLocationName *<TwnLctnNm>*	[0..1]	Text		125
		DistrictName *<DstrctNm>*	[0..1]	Text		125
		CountrySubDivision *<CtrySubDvsn>*	[0..1]	Text		125
		Country *<Ctry>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		125
		AddressLine *<AdrLine>*	[0..7]	Text		125

2.1.15.1.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the nature of the postal address.

AddressType <AdrTp> contains one of the following **AddressType3Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	±		123

2.1.15.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of address expressed as a code.

Datatype: AddressType2Code on page 166

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

2.1.15.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of address expressed as a proprietary code.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following elements (see GenericIdentification30 on page 100 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[1..1]	Text		100
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[1..1]	Text		100
		SchemeName *<SchmeNm>*	[0..1]	Text		101

2.1.15.1.2 CareOf <CareOf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies an addressee that is accepting the correspondence for the intended recipient. Using care of ensures the correspondence reaches the right recipient rather than getting returned to the sender.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.15.1.3 Department <Dept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: Max70Text on page 199

2.1.15.1.4 SubDepartment <SubDept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: Max70Text on page 199

2.1.15.1.5 StreetName <StrtNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a street or thoroughfare.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.15.1.6 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

Datatype: Max16Text on page 198

2.1.15.1.7 BuildingName <BldgNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the building or house.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.15.1.8 Floor <Flr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Floor or storey within a building.

Datatype: Max70Text on page 199

2.1.15.1.9 UnitNumber <UnitNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a flat or dwelling within the building.

Datatype: Max16Text on page 198

2.1.15.1.10 PostBox <PstBx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Numbered box in a post office, assigned to a person or organisation, where letters are kept until called for.

Datatype: Max16Text on page 198

2.1.15.1.11 Room <Room>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Building room number.

Datatype: Max70Text on page 199

2.1.15.1.12 PostCode <PstCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

Datatype: Max16Text on page 198

2.1.15.1.13 TownName <TwnNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.15.1.14 TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specific location name within the town.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.15.1.15 DistrictName <DstrctNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a subdivision within a country sub-division.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.15.1.16 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.15.1.17 Country <Ctry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Nation with its own government.

Datatype: CountryCode on page 168

2.1.15.1.18 AddressLine <AdrLine>

Presence: [0..7]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.

Datatype: Max70Text on page 199

2.1.16   Remittance

2.1.16.1 RemittanceInformation22

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Unstructured *<Ustrd>*	[0..*]	Text		126
		Structured *<Strd>*	[0..*]	±		126

2.1.16.1.1 Unstructured <Ustrd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in an unstructured form.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.16.1.2 Structured <Strd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Structured <Strd> contains the following elements (see StructuredRemittanceInformation18 on page 130 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ReferredDocumentInformation <*RfrdDocInf*>	[0..*]			134
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			136
		CodeOrProprietary <*CdOrPrtry*>	[1..1]			136
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		136
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		136
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		136
		Number <*Nb*>	[0..1]	Text		137
		RelatedDate <*RltdDt*>	[0..1]			137
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]			137
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		137
		Date <*Dt*>	[1..1]	Date		137
		LineDetails <*LineDtls*>	[0..*]			138
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..*]			138
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			139
		CodeOrProprietary <*CdOrPrtry*>	[1..1]			139
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		139
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		140
		Number <*Nb*>	[0..1]	Text		140
		RelatedDate <*RltdDt*>	[0..1]	Date		140
		Description <*Desc*>	[0..1]	Text		140
		Amount <*Amt*>	[0..1]			140
		RemittanceAmountAndType <*RmtAmtAndTp*>	[0..*]			141
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]			141
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		141
		Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount		141
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <*AdjstmntAmtAndRsn*>	[0..*]			141

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		142
		CreditDebitIndicator *<CdtDbtInd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		142
		Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]	Text		142
		AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		142
		ReferredDocumentAmount *<RfrdDocAmt>*	[0..1]			142
		RemittanceAmountAndType *<RmtAmtAndTp>*	[0..*]			143
		Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]			143
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		144
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		144
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason *<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>*	[0..*]			144
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		144
		CreditDebitIndicator *<CdtDbtInd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		144
		Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]	Text		144
		AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		145
		CreditorReferenceInformation *<CdtrRefInf>*	[0..1]			145
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			145
		CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			145
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		146
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		146
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		146
		Reference *<Ref>*	[0..1]	Text		146
		Invoicer *<Invcr>*	[0..1]	±		146
		Invoicee *<Invcee>*	[0..1]	±		147
		TaxRemittance *<TaxRmt>*	[0..1]			148
		Creditor *<Cdtr>*	[0..1]	±		150
		Debtor *<Dbtr>*	[0..1]	±		150
		UltimateDebtor *<UltmtDbtr>*	[0..1]	±		150
		AdministrationZone *<AdmstnZone>*	[0..1]	Text		151
		ReferenceNumber *<RefNb>*	[0..1]	Text		151
		Method *<Mtd>*	[0..1]	Text		151

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TotalTaxableBaseAmount <*TtlTaxblBaseAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount		151
		TotalTaxAmount <*TtlTaxAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount		151
		Date <*Dt*>	[0..1]	Date		151
		SequenceNumber <*SeqNb*>	[0..1]	Quantity		152
		Record <*Rcrd*>	[0..*]			152
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	Text		152
		Category <*Ctgy*>	[0..1]	Text		153
		CategoryDetails <*CtgyDtls*>	[0..1]	Text		153
		DebtorStatus <*DbtrSts*>	[0..1]	Text		153
		CertificateIdentification <*CertId*>	[0..1]	Text		153
		FormsCode <*FrmsCd*>	[0..1]	Text		153
		Period <*Prd*>	[0..1]			153
		Year <*Yr*>	[0..1]	Year		153
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		154
		FromToDate <*FrToDt*>	[0..1]	±		154
		TaxAmount <*TaxAmt*>	[0..1]			155
		Rate <*Rate*>	[0..1]	Rate		155
		TaxableBaseAmount <*TaxblBaseAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount		155
		TotalAmount <*TtlAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount		155
		Details <*Dtls*>	[0..*]			155
		Period <*Prd*>	[0..1]			156
		Year <*Yr*>	[0..1]	Year		156
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
		FromToDate <*FrToDt*>	[0..1]	±		157
		Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount		157
		AdditionalInformation <*AddtlInf*>	[0..1]	Text		157
		GarnishmentRemittance <*GrnshmtRmt*>	[0..1]			158
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]			158
		CodeOrProprietary <*CdOrPrtry*>	[1..1]			158
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		159

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		159
		Garnishee <*Grnshee*>	[0..1]	±		159
		GarnishmentAdministrator <*GrnshmtAdmstr*>	[0..1]	±		160
		ReferenceNumber <*RefNb*>	[0..1]	Text		161
		Date <*Dt*>	[0..1]	Date		162
		RemittedAmount <*RmtdAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount		162
		FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <*FmlyMdclInsrncInd*>	[0..1]	Indicator		162
		EmployeeTerminationIndicator <*MplyeeTermntnInd*>	[0..1]	Indicator		162
		AdditionalRemittanceInformation <*AddtlRmtInf*>	[0..3]	Text		162

2.1.16.2 StructuredRemittanceInformation18

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>	[0..*]			134
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			136
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			136
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		136
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		136
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		136
		Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		137
		RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]			137
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			137
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		137
		Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		137
		LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			138
		Identification <Id>	[1..*]			138
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			139
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			139
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		139
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		140
		Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		140
		RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		140
		Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		140
		Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			140
		RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>	[0..*]			141
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			141
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		141
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		141
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			141
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		142
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		142

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]	Text		142
		AdditionalInformation <*Addtllnf*>	[0..1]	Text		142
		ReferredDocumentAmount <*RfrdDocAmt*>	[0..1]			142
		RemittanceAmountAndType <*RmtAmtAndTp*>	[0..*]			143
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]			143
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		144
		Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount		144
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <*AdjstmntAmtAndRsn*>	[0..*]			144
		Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount		144
		CreditDebitIndicator <*CdtDbtInd*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		144
		Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]	Text		144
		AdditionalInformation <*Addtllnf*>	[0..1]	Text		145
		CreditorReferenceInformation <*CdtrRefInf*>	[0..1]			145
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			145
		CodeOrProprietary <*CdOrPrtry*>	[1..1]			145
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		146
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		146
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		146
		Reference <*Ref*>	[0..1]	Text		146
		Invoicer <*Invcr*>	[0..1]	±		146
		Invoicee <*Invcee*>	[0..1]	±		147
		TaxRemittance <*TaxRmt*>	[0..1]			148
		Creditor <*Cdtr*>	[0..1]	±		150
		Debtor <*Dbtr*>	[0..1]	±		150
		UltimateDebtor <*UltmtDbtr*>	[0..1]	±		150
		AdministrationZone <*AdmstnZone*>	[0..1]	Text		151
		ReferenceNumber <*RefNb*>	[0..1]	Text		151
		Method <*Mtd*>	[0..1]	Text		151
		TotalTaxableBaseAmount <*TtlTaxblBaseAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount		151
		TotalTaxAmount <*TtlTaxAmt*>	[0..1]	Amount		151

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		151
		SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		152
		Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			152
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		152
		Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		153
		CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		153
		DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		153
		CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		153
		FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		153
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			153
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		153
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		154
		FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		154
		TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			155
		Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		155
		TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		155
		TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		155
		Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			155
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			156
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		156
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
		FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		157
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		157
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		157
		GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]			158
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			158
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			158
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		159
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		159
		Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		159

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		GarnishmentAdministrator *<GrnshmtAdmstr>*	[0..1]	±		160
		ReferenceNumber *<RefNb>*	[0..1]	Text		161
		Date *<Dt>*	[0..1]	Date		162
		RemittedAmount *<RmtdAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount		162
		FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator *<FmlyMdclInsrncInd>*	[0..1]	Indicator		162
		EmployeeTerminationIndicator *<MplyeeTermntnInd>*	[0..1]	Indicator		162
		AdditionalRemittanceInformation *<AddtlRmtInf>*	[0..3]	Text		162

2.1.16.2.1 ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides the identification and the content of the referred document.

ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf> contains the following
ReferredDocumentInformation8 elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			136
		CodeOrProprietary <*CdOrPrtry*>	[1..1]			136
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		136
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		136
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		136
		Number <*Nb*>	[0..1]	Text		137
		RelatedDate <*RltdDt*>	[0..1]			137
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]			137
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		137
		Date <*Dt*>	[1..1]	Date		137
		LineDetails <*LineDtls*>	[0..*]			138
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..*]			138
		Type <*Tp*>	[0..1]			139
		CodeOrProprietary <*CdOrPrtry*>	[1..1]			139
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		139
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		140
		Number <*Nb*>	[0..1]	Text		140
		RelatedDate <*RltdDt*>	[0..1]	Date		140
		Description <*Desc*>	[0..1]	Text		140
		Amount <*Amt*>	[0..1]			140
		RemittanceAmountAndType <*RmtAmtAndTp*>	[0..*]			141
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]			141
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		141
		Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount		141
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <*AdjstmntAmtAndRsn*>	[0..*]			141
		Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount		142

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		CreditDebitIndicator <*CdtDbtInd*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		142
		Reason <*Rsn*>	[0..1]	Text		142
		AdditionalInformation <*AddtlInf*>	[0..1]	Text		142

2.1.16.2.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document.

Type <Tp> contains the following **DocumentType1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		CodeOrProprietary <*CdOrPrtry*>	[1..1]			136
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		136
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		136
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		136

2.1.16.2.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Coded or proprietary format referred document type.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **DocumentType2Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		136
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		136

2.1.16.2.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of remittance document, as published in an external document type code set.

Datatype: ExternalDocumentType1Code on page 175

2.1.16.2.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of remittance document, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.1.2 Number <Nb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and date type associated with the referred document.

RelatedDate <RltdDt> contains the following **DateAndType1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]			137
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		137
		Date <*Dt*>	[1..1]	Date		137

2.1.16.2.1.3.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of date associated with the referred document.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **DateType2Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		137
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		137

2.1.16.2.1.3.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the date type, as published in an external date type code set.

Datatype: ExternalDateType1Code on page 174

2.1.16.2.1.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the date type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.1.3.2 Date <Dt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date associated with the referred document.

Datatype: ISODate on page 193

2.1.16.2.1.4 LineDetails <LineDtls>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide the content of the referred document line.

LineDetails <LineDtls> contains the following **DocumentLineInformation2** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification *<Id>*	[1..*]			138
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			139
		CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			139
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		139
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		140
		Number *<Nb>*	[0..1]	Text		140
		RelatedDate *<RltdDt>*	[0..1]	Date		140
		Description *<Desc>*	[0..1]	Text		140
		Amount *<Amt>*	[0..1]			140
		RemittanceAmountAndType *<RmtAmtAndTp>*	[0..*]			141
		Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]			141
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		141
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		141
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason *<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>*	[0..*]			141
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		142
		CreditDebitIndicator *<CdtDbtInd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		142
		Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]	Text		142
		AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		142

2.1.16.2.1.4.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..*]

Definition: Provides identification of the document line.

Identification <Id> contains the following **DocumentLineIdentification1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			139
		CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			139
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		139
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		140
		Number *<Nb>*	[0..1]	Text		140
		RelatedDate *<RltdDt>*	[0..1]	Date		140

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document line identification.

Type <Tp> contains the following **DocumentLineType1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			139
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		139
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		140

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document line identification.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **DocumentLineType1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		139
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		139

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Line identification type in a coded form.

Datatype: ExternalDocumentLineType1Code on page 175

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the reference document line identificationtype.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.2 Number <Nb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the type specified for the referred document line.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date associated with the referred document line.

Datatype: ISODate on page 193

2.1.16.2.1.4.2 Description <Desc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Description associated with the document line.

Datatype: Max2048Text on page 198

2.1.16.2.1.4.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the amounts of the document line.

Amount <Amt> contains the following **RemittanceAmount4** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		RemittanceAmountAndType *<RmtAmtAndTp>*	[0..*]			141
		Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]			141
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		141
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		141
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason *<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>*	[0..*]			141
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		142
		CreditDebitIndicator *<CdtDbtInd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		142
		Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]	Text		142
		AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		142

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.1 RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Type and amount of money for the referred document.

RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp> contains the following **DocumentAmount1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <*Tp*>	[1..1]			141
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		141
		Amount <*Amt*>	[1..1]	Amount		141

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Defines the type of amount.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **DocumentAmountType1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		141

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, as published in an external referred amount code set.

Datatype: ExternalDocumentAmountType1Code on page 174

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.1.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money for the referred document.

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.2 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the adjustment.

AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn> contains the following **DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		142
		CreditDebitIndicator *<CdtDbtInd>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		142
		Reason *<Rsn>*	[0..1]	Text		142
		AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		142

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the document adjustment.

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

Datatype: CreditDebitCode on page 169

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.2.3 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

Datatype: Max4Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.2.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details on the document adjustment.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.16.2.2 ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the amounts of the referred document.

ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt> contains the following **RemittanceAmount4** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>	[0..*]			143
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			143
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		144
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		144
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			144
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		144
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		144
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		144
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		145

2.1.16.2.2.1 RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Type and amount of money for the referred document.

RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp> contains the following **DocumentAmount1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			143
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		144
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		144

2.1.16.2.2.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Defines the type of amount.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **DocumentAmountType1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		143
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		144

2.1.16.2.2.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, as published in an external referred amount code set.

Datatype: ExternalDocumentAmountType1Code on page 174

2.1.16.2.2.1.1.2 Proprietary \<Prtry\>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.2.1.2 Amount \<Amt\>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money for the referred document.

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165

2.1.16.2.2.2 AdjustmentAmountAndReason \<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn\>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the adjustment.

AdjustmentAmountAndReason \<AdjstmntAmtAndRsn\> contains the following **DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*\<XML Tag\>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount *\<Amt\>*	[1..1]	Amount		144
		CreditDebitIndicator *\<CdtDbtInd\>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		144
		Reason *\<Rsn\>*	[0..1]	Text		144
		AdditionalInformation *\<AddtlInf\>*	[0..1]	Text		145

2.1.16.2.2.2.1 Amount \<Amt\>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the document adjustment.

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165

2.1.16.2.2.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator \<CdtDbtInd\>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

Datatype: CreditDebitCode on page 169

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

2.1.16.2.2.2.3 Reason \<Rsn\>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

Datatype: Max4Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.2.2.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details on the document adjustment.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.16.2.3 CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf> contains the following **CreditorReferenceInformation3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]			145
		CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			145
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		146
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		146
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		146
		Reference *<Ref>*	[0..1]	Text		146

2.1.16.2.3.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of creditor reference.

Type <Tp> contains the following **CreditorReferenceType3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			145
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		146
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		146
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		146

2.1.16.2.3.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Coded or proprietary format creditor reference type.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **CreditorReferenceType2Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		146
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		146

2.1.16.2.3.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of creditor reference, as published in an external creditor reference type code set.

Datatype: ExternalCreditorReferenceType1Code on page 173

2.1.16.2.3.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of creditor reference, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.3.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the credit reference type.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.3.2 Reference <Ref>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously refer to the payment transaction.

Usage: If available, the initiating party should provide this reference in the structured remittance information, to enable reconciliation by the creditor upon receipt of the amount of money.

If the business context requires the use of a creditor reference or a payment remit identification, and only one identifier can be passed through the end-to-end chain, the creditor's reference or payment remittance identification should be quoted in the end-to-end transaction identification.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.4 Invoicer <Invcr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the organisation issuing the invoice, when it is different from the creditor or ultimate creditor.

Invoicer <Invcr> contains the following elements (see <u>PartyIdentification272 on page 107</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		115

2.1.16.2.5 Invoicee <Invcee>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the party to whom an invoice is issued, when it is different from the debtor or ultimate debtor.

Invoicee <Invcee> contains the following elements (see PartyIdentification272 on page 107 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		115

2.1.16.2.6 TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides remittance information about a payment made for tax-related purposes.

TaxRemittance <TaxRmt> contains the following **TaxData1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		150
		Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		150
		UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		150
		AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		151
		ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		151
		Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		151
		TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		151
		TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		151
		Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		151
		SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		152
		Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			152
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		152
		Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		153
		CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		153
		DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		153
		CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		153
		FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		153
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			153
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		153
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		154
		FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		154
		TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			155
		Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		155
		TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		155
		TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		155
		Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			155
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			156
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		156
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
		FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		157

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		157
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		157

2.1.16.2.6.1 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains the following elements (see <u>TaxParty1 on page 164</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		164
		RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		164
		TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		164

2.1.16.2.6.2 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains the following elements (see <u>TaxParty2 on page 163</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		163
		RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		163
		TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		163
		Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			164
		Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		164
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		164

2.1.16.2.6.3 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the taxing authority.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains the following elements (see <u>TaxParty2 on page 163</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TaxIdentification <*TaxId*>	[0..1]	Text		163
		RegistrationIdentification <*RegnId*>	[0..1]	Text		163
		TaxType <*TaxTp*>	[0..1]	Text		163
		Authorisation <*Authstn*>	[0..1]			164
		Title <*Titl*>	[0..1]	Text		164
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		164

2.1.16.2.6.4 AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.

Datatype: <u>Max35Text on page 199</u>

2.1.16.2.6.5 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.

Datatype: <u>Max140Text on page 198</u>

2.1.16.2.6.6 Method <Mtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.

Datatype: <u>Max35Text on page 199</u>

2.1.16.2.6.7 TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money on which the tax is based.

Datatype: <u>ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165</u>

2.1.16.2.6.8 TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

Datatype: <u>ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165</u>

2.1.16.2.6.9 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date by which tax is due.

Datatype: <u>ISODate on page 193</u>

2.1.16.2.6.10 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Sequential number of the tax report.

Datatype: Number on page 196

2.1.16.2.6.11 Record <Rcrd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Record of tax details.

Record <Rcrd> contains the following **TaxRecord3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	Text		152
		Category *<Ctgy>*	[0..1]	Text		153
		CategoryDetails *<CtgyDtls>*	[0..1]	Text		153
		DebtorStatus *<DbtrSts>*	[0..1]	Text		153
		CertificateIdentification *<CertId>*	[0..1]	Text		153
		FormsCode *<FrmsCd>*	[0..1]	Text		153
		Period *<Prd>*	[0..1]			153
		Year *<Yr>*	[0..1]	Year		153
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		154
		FromToDate *<FrToDt>*	[0..1]	±		154
		TaxAmount *<TaxAmt>*	[0..1]			155
		Rate *<Rate>*	[0..1]	Rate		155
		TaxableBaseAmount *<TaxblBaseAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount		155
		TotalAmount *<TtlAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount		155
		Details *<Dtls>*	[0..*]			155
		Period *<Prd>*	[0..1]			156
		Year *<Yr>*	[0..1]	Year		156
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
		FromToDate *<FrToDt>*	[0..1]	±		157
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		157
		AdditionalInformation *<AddtlInf>*	[0..1]	Text		157

2.1.16.2.6.11.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: High level code to identify the type of tax details.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.6.11.2 Category <Ctgy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the tax code as published by the tax authority.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.6.11.3 CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details of the category tax code.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.6.11.4 DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Code provided by local authority to identify the status of the party that has drawn up the settlement document.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.6.11.5 CertificateIdentification <CertId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification number of the tax report as assigned by the taxing authority.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.6.11.6 FormsCode <FrmsCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies, in a coded form, on which template the tax report is to be provided.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.6.11.7 Period <Prd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

Period <Prd> contains the following **TaxPeriod3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Year *<Yr>*	[0..1]	Year		153
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		154
		FromToDate *<FrToDt>*	[0..1]	±		154

2.1.16.2.6.11.7.1 Year <Yr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Year related to the tax payment.

Datatype: ISOYear on page 200

2.1.16.2.6.11.7.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the period related to the tax payment.

Datatype: TaxRecordPeriod1Code on page 191

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

2.1.16.2.6.11.7.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

FromToDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see <u>DatePeriod2 on page 87</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		87
		ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		87

2.1.16.2.6.11.8 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the amount of the tax record.

TaxAmount <TaxAmt> contains the following **TaxAmount3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		155
		TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		155
		TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		155
		Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			155
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			156
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		156
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
		FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		157
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		157

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.1 Rate <Rate>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Rate used to calculate the tax.

Datatype: <u>PercentageRate on page 196</u>

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.2 TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money on which the tax is based.

Datatype: <u>ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165</u>

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.3 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount that is the result of the calculation of the tax for the record.

Datatype: <u>ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165</u>

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4 Details <Dtls>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the tax period and amount.

Details <Dtls> contains the following **TaxRecordDetails3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Period *<Prd>*	[0..1]			156
		Year *<Yr>*	[0..1]	Year		156
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
		FromToDate *<FrToDt>*	[0..1]	±		157
		Amount *<Amt>*	[1..1]	Amount		157

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4.1 Period <Prd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

Period <Prd> contains the following **TaxPeriod3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Year *<Yr>*	[0..1]	Year		156
		Type *<Tp>*	[0..1]	CodeSet		156
		FromToDate *<FrToDt>*	[0..1]	±		157

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4.1.1 Year <Yr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Year related to the tax payment.

Datatype: ISOYear on page 200

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4.1.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the period related to the tax payment.

Datatype: TaxRecordPeriod1Code on page 191

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4.1.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

FromToDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see DatePeriod2 on page 87 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FromDate <*FrDt*>	[1..1]	Date		87
		ToDate <*ToDt*>	[1..1]	Date		87

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Underlying tax amount related to the specified period.

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165

2.1.16.2.6.11.9 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the tax record.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.16.2.7 GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt> contains the following **Garnishment4** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type *<Tp>*	[1..1]			158
		CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			158
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		159
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		159
		Garnishee *<Grnshee>*	[0..1]	±		159
		GarnishmentAdministrator *<GrnshmtAdmstr>*	[0..1]	±		160
		ReferenceNumber *<RefNb>*	[0..1]	Text		161
		Date *<Dt>*	[0..1]	Date		162
		RemittedAmount *<RmtdAmt>*	[0..1]	Amount		162
		FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator *<FmlyMdclInsrncInd>*	[0..1]	Indicator		162
		EmployeeTerminationIndicator *<MplyeeTermntnInd>*	[0..1]	Indicator		162

2.1.16.2.7.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of garnishment.

Type <Tp> contains the following **GarnishmentType1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		CodeOrProprietary *<CdOrPrtry>*	[1..1]			158
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		159
		Issuer *<Issr>*	[0..1]	Text		159

2.1.16.2.7.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the garnishment.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **GarnishmentType1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code *<Cd>*	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary *<Prtry>*	[1..1]	Text		159

2.1.16.2.7.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Garnishment type in a coded form.

Would suggest this to be an External Code List to contain:

GNCS   Garnishment from a third party payer for Child Support

GNDP   Garnishment from a Direct Payer for Child Support

GTPP   Garnishment from a third party payer to taxing agency.

Datatype: ExternalGarnishmentType1Code on page 177

2.1.16.2.7.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary identification of the type of garnishment.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.7.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the garnishment type.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.16.2.7.2 Garnishee <Grnshee>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the garnisher.

Garnishee <Grnshee> contains the following elements (see <u>PartyIdentification272 on page 107</u> for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		115

2.1.16.2.7.3 GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the credit side of the transaction who administers the garnishment on behalf of the ultimate beneficiary.

GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr> contains the following elements (see
PartyIdentification272 on page 107 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		108
		PostalAddress <*PstlAdr*>	[0..1]	±		109
		Identification <*Id*>	[0..1]			109
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <*OrgId*>	[1..1]			110
		AnyBIC <*AnyBIC*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		LEI <*LEI*>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			111
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		111
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			112
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		112
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		112
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		112
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <*PrvtId*>	[1..1]			112
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <*DtAndPlcOfBirth*>	[0..1]			113
		BirthDate <*BirthDt*>	[1..1]	Date		113
		ProvinceOfBirth <*PrvcOfBirth*>	[0..1]	Text		113
		CityOfBirth <*CityOfBirth*>	[1..1]	Text		113
		CountryOfBirth <*CtryOfBirth*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
		Other <*Othr*>	[0..*]			114
		Identification <*Id*>	[1..1]	Text		114
		SchemeName <*SchmeNm*>	[0..1]			114
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		114
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		115
		Issuer <*Issr*>	[0..1]	Text		115
		CountryOfResidence <*CtryOfRes*>	[0..1]	CodeSet		115
		ContactDetails <*CtctDtls*>	[0..1]	±		115

2.1.16.2.7.4 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reference information that is specific to the agency receiving the garnishment.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.16.2.7.5 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of payment which garnishment was taken from.

Datatype: ISODate on page 193

2.1.16.2.7.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money remitted for the referred document.

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 165

2.1.16.2.7.7 FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates if the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has family medical insurance coverage available.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see TrueFalseIndicator on page 196):

- *Meaning When True:* True

- *Meaning When False:* False

2.1.16.2.7.8 EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates if the employment of the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has been terminated.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see TrueFalseIndicator on page 196):

- *Meaning When True:* True

- *Meaning When False:* False

2.1.16.2.8 AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>

Presence: [0..3]

Definition: Additional information, in free text form, to complement the structured remittance information.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.17　　System Identification

2.1.17.1 ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice

Definition: Choice of a clearing system identifier.

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <*Cd*>	[1..1]	CodeSet		163
	Or}	Proprietary <*Prtry*>	[1..1]	Text		163

2.1.17.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code on page 172

2.1.17.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.18   Tax

2.1.18.1 TaxParty2

Definition: Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Index	Or	MessageElement<*XML Tag*>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TaxIdentification <*TaxId*>	[0..1]	Text		163
		RegistrationIdentification <*RegnId*>	[0..1]	Text		163
		TaxType <*TaxTp*>	[0..1]	Text		163
		Authorisation <*Authstn*>	[0..1]			164
		Title <*Titl*>	[0..1]	Text		164
		Name <*Nm*>	[0..1]	Text		164

2.1.18.1.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax identification number of the debtor.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.18.1.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.18.1.3 TaxType <TaxTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of tax payer.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.18.1.4 Authorisation <Authstn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Details of the authorised tax paying party.

Authorisation <Authstn> contains the following **TaxAuthorisation1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Title *<Titl>*	[0..1]	Text		164
		Name *<Nm>*	[0..1]	Text		164

2.1.18.1.4.1 Title <Titl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Title or position of debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.18.1.4.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 198

2.1.18.2 TaxParty1

Definition: Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Index	Or	MessageElement*<XML Tag>*	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TaxIdentification *<TaxId>*	[0..1]	Text		164
		RegistrationIdentification *<RegnId>*	[0..1]	Text		164
		TaxType *<TaxTp>*	[0..1]	Text		164

2.1.18.2.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax identification number of the creditor.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.18.2.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 199

2.1.18.2.3 TaxType <TaxTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of tax payer.

Datatype: <u>Max35Text on page 199</u>

2.2   Message Datatypes

2.2.1   Amount

2.2.1.1 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount

Definition: A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

Type: Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode on page 166

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* D00006

  – *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

- **CurrencyAmount**

  The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

  Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* D00007

  – *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

2.2.2   Binary

2.2.2.1 Max10KBinary

Definition: Binary data of 10K maximum.

Type: Binary

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	10240

2.2.3   CodeSet

2.2.3.1 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode

Definition: A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

  The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* D00006

  – *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

Restricts

ParentCurrencyCode on page 187

2.2.3.2 AddressType2Code

Definition: Specifies the type of address.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.

CodeName	Name	Definition
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

Restricts

2.2.3.3 AddressTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the type of address.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

Is restricted by

2.2.3.4 AmountDirectionCode

Definition: Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease or the result of a reversal operation.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
RVDB	ReversalDebit	Credit entry used to reverse a previously booked debit entry.
RVCD	ReversalCredit	Debit entry used to reverse a previously booked credit entry.

Is restricted by

2.2.3.5 ClearingChannel2Code

Definition: Specifies the clearing channel for the routing of the transaction, as part of the payment type identification.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RTGS	RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.
RTNS	RealTimeNetSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.
MPNS	MassPaymentNetSystem	Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system.
BOOK	BookTransfer	Payment through internal book transfer.

Restricts

ClearingChannelCode on page 168

2.2.3.6 ClearingChannelCode

Definition: Specifies the clearing channel for the routing of the transaction, as part of the payment type identification.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RTGS	RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.
RTNS	RealTimeNetSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.
MPNS	MassPaymentNetSystem	Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system.
BOOK	BookTransfer	Payment through internal book transfer.

Is restricted by

ClearingChannel2Code on page 168

2.2.3.7 CountryCode

Definition: Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern   [A-Z]{2,2}

Constraints

- **Country**

  The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* D00004

  – *Error Text:* Invalid Country Code.

2.2.3.8 CreditDebitCode

Definition: Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

Restricts

AmountDirectionCode on page 167

2.2.3.9 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalAccountIdentificationCode on page 169

2.2.3.10 ExternalAccountIdentificationCode

Definition: Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalAccountIdentification1Code on page 169

2.2.3.11 ExternalCashAccountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalCashAccountTypeCode on page 170

2.2.3.12 ExternalCashAccountTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalCashAccountType1Code on page 170

2.2.3.13 ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code

Definition: Specifies the cash clearing system, as published in an external cash clearing system code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	3

Restricts

ExternalCashClearingSystemCode on page 171

2.2.3.14 ExternalCashClearingSystemCode

Definition: Specifies the cash clearing system, as published in an external cash clearing system code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code on page 170

2.2.3.15 ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code

Definition: Specifies the category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalCategoryPurposeCode on page 171

2.2.3.16 ExternalCategoryPurposeCode

Definition: Specifies the category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code on page 171

2.2.3.17 ExternalChargeType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the charges in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalChargeTypeCode on page 172

2.2.3.18 ExternalChargeTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the charges in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code set published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalChargeType1Code on page 172

2.2.3.19 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	5

Restricts

ExternalClearingSystemIdentificationCode on page 173

2.2.3.20 ExternalClearingSystemIdentificationCode

Definition: Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	5

Is restricted by

ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code on page 172

2.2.3.21 ExternalCreditorReferenceType1Code

Definition: Specifies the type of creditor reference as published in an external creditor reference type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalCreditorReferenceTypeCode on page 173

2.2.3.22 ExternalCreditorReferenceTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the type of creditor reference as published in an external creditor reference type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalCreditorReferenceType1Code on page 173

2.2.3.23 ExternalDateType1Code

Definition: Defines the type of date, as published in an external date type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalDateTypeCode on page 174

2.2.3.24 ExternalDateTypeCode

Definition: Defines the type of date, as published in an external date type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalDateType1Code on page 174

2.2.3.25 ExternalDocumentAmountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount, as published in an external document amount type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalDocumentAmountTypeCode on page 174

2.2.3.26 ExternalDocumentAmountTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount, as published in an external document amount type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

2.2.3.27 ExternalDocumentLineType1Code

Definition: Specifies the document line type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

2.2.3.28 ExternalDocumentLineTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the document line type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

2.2.3.29 ExternalDocumentType1Code

Definition: Specifies the document type as published in an external document type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalDocumentTypeCode on page 176

2.2.3.30 ExternalDocumentTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the document type as published in an external document type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalDocumentType1Code on page 175

2.2.3.31 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentificationCode on page 176

2.2.3.32 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentificationCode

Definition: Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

2.2.3.33 ExternalGarnishmentType1Code

Definition: Specifies the garnishment type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

2.2.3.34 ExternalGarnishmentTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the garnishment type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

2.2.3.35 ExternalLocalInstrument1Code

Definition: Specifies the external local instrument code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

Restricts

2.2.3.36 ExternalLocalInstrumentCode

Definition: Specifies the external local instrument code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

Is restricted by

ExternalLocalInstrument1Code on page 177

2.2.3.37 ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code

Definition: Specifies the external mandate setup reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalMandateSetupReasonCode on page 178

2.2.3.38 ExternalMandateSetupReasonCode

Definition: Specifies the external mandate setup reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code on page 178

2.2.3.39 ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

2.2.3.40 ExternalOrganisationIdentificationCode

Definition: Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

2.2.3.41 ExternalPaymentGroupStatus1Code

Definition: Specifies the status of a group of payment instructions, as published in an external payment group status code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

2.2.3.42 ExternalPaymentGroupStatusCode

Definition: Specifies the status of a group of payment instructions, as published in an external payment group status code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalPaymentGroupStatus1Code on page 179

2.2.3.43 ExternalPaymentTransactionStatus1Code

Definition: Specifies the status of an individual payment instructions, as published in an external payment transaction status code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalPaymentTransactionStatusCode on page 180

2.2.3.44 ExternalPaymentTransactionStatusCode

Definition: Specifies the status of an individual payment instructions, as published in an external payment transaction status code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalPaymentTransactionStatus1Code on page 180

2.2.3.45 ExternalPersonIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

2.2.3.46 ExternalPersonIdentificationCode

Definition: Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

2.2.3.47 ExternalProxyAccountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the external proxy account type code, as published in the proxy account type external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

2.2.3.48 ExternalProxyAccountTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the external proxy account type code, as published in the proxy account type external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalProxyAccountType1Code on page 181

2.2.3.49 ExternalPurpose1Code

Definition: Specifies the external purpose code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalPurposeCode on page 182

2.2.3.50 ExternalPurposeCode

Definition: Specifies the external purpose code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalPurpose1Code on page 182

2.2.3.51 ExternalServiceLevel1Code

Definition: Specifies the external service level code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalServiceLevelCode on page 183

2.2.3.52 ExternalServiceLevelCode

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalServiceLevel1Code on page 183

2.2.3.53 ExternalStatusReason1Code

Definition: Specifies the status reason, as published in an external status reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalStatusReasonCode on page 184

2.2.3.54 ExternalStatusReasonCode

Definition: Specifies the status reason, as published in an external status reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalStatusReason1Code on page 183

2.2.3.55 Frequency6Code

Definition: Specifies the regularity of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

Restricts

FrequencyCode on page 184

2.2.3.56 FrequencyCode

Definition: Specifies the regularity of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
OVNG	Overnight	Event takes place overnight.
TEND	TenDays	Event takes place every ten business days.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.
MOVE	TriggeredByMovement	Event takes place at the end of the day if there was a movement on the account, otherwise nothing is sent that day.
NEVR	Never	Event does never take place.
RATE	Rate	Event takes place based on a change of a rate.
CRED	OnCreditEvent	Event occurs due to a credit event occurring for an issuer.
UPFR	Upfront	Event that takes place at the initiation of a trade or agreement.
EXPI	OnExpiry	Event occurs on expiry of a financial contract.
HOUL	Hourly	Event takes place every hours.
TRIL	TriAnnual	Event takes place every four months or three times a year.
BIMN	Bimonthly	Event takes place every two months or six times a year.
ODMD	OnDemand	Event takes place on demand.
SHFT	Shift	Event associated with a shift.
TWWK	TwiceAWeek	Two times a week

Is restricted by

2.2.3.57 MandateClassification1Code

Definition: Specifies the type of direct debit amount, such as fixed or variable.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.

Restricts

MandateClassificationCode on page 186

2.2.3.58 MandateClassificationCode

Definition: Specifies the type of direct debit amount, such as fixed or variable.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.

Is restricted by

MandateClassification1Code on page 185

2.2.3.59 NamePrefix2Code

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

Restricts

NamePrefixCode on page 186

2.2.3.60 NamePrefixCode

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

Is restricted by

NamePrefix2Code on page 186

2.2.3.61 ParentCurrencyCode

Definition: Code allocated to a currency, by a maintenance agency, under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds". Valid currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, and consist of three contiguous letters.

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}

Is restricted by

ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode on page 166

2.2.3.62 PaymentMethod4Code

Definition: Specifies the transfer method that will be used to transfer an amount of money.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CHK	Cheque	Written order to a bank to pay a certain amount of money from one person to another person.
TRF	CreditTransfer	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer.
DD	DirectDebit	Collection of an amount of money from the debtor's bank account by the creditor. The amount of money and dates of collections may vary.
TRA	TransferAdvice	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer. An advice should be sent back to the account owner.

Restricts

PaymentMethodCode on page 187

2.2.3.63 PaymentMethodCode

Definition: Specifies the transfer method that will be used to transfer the cash.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CHK	Cheque	Written order to a bank to pay a certain amount of money from one person to another person.
TRF	CreditTransfer	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer.
DD	DirectDebit	Collection of an amount of money from the debtor's bank account by the creditor. The amount of money and dates of collections may vary.
TRA	TransferAdvice	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer. An advice should be sent back to the account owner.
DIRE	Direct	Direct method.
CLAS	Classical	Classical method.

Is restricted by

PaymentMethod4Code on page 187

2.2.3.64 PreferredContactMethod2Code

Definition: Preferred method used to reach the individual contact within an organisation.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.
ONLI	Online	Preferred method used to reach the contact is online.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.

Restricts

PreferredContactMethodCode on page 188

2.2.3.65 PreferredContactMethodCode

Definition: Preferred method used to reach the individual contact within an organisation.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.
ONLI	Online	Preferred method used to reach the contact is online.

Is restricted by

PreferredContactMethod2Code on page 188

2.2.3.66 Priority2Code

Definition: Specifies the priority level of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

Restricts

PriorityCode on page 189

2.2.3.67 PriorityCode

Definition: Specifies the priority level of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
URGT	Urgent	Priority level is urgent (highest priority possible).
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.
LOWW	Low	Priority level is low.

Is restricted by

Priority2Code on page 189

2.2.3.68 SequenceType3Code

Definition: Specifies the type of the current transaction that belongs to a sequence of transactions.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRST	First	First collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
FNAL	Final	Final collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.
RPRE	Represented	Collection used to re-present previously reversed or returned direct debit transactions.

Restricts

SequenceTypeCode on page 190

2.2.3.69 SequenceTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the type of the current transaction that belongs to a sequence of transactions.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRST	First	First collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
FNAL	Final	Final collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.
RPRE	Represented	Collection used to re-present previously reversed or returned direct debit transactions.

Is restricted by

SequenceType3Code on page 189

2.2.3.70 SettlementMethod1Code

Definition: Specifies the method used to settle the credit transfer instruction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
COVE	CoverMethod	Settlement is done through a cover payment.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

Restricts

2.2.3.71 SettlementMethodCode

Definition: Specifies the method used to settle the payment instruction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
COVE	CoverMethod	Settlement is done through a cover payment.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

Is restricted by

2.2.3.72 TaxRecordPeriod1Code

Definition: Specifies the period related to the tax payment.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

Restricts

TaxRecordPeriodCode on page 192

2.2.3.73 TaxRecordPeriodCode

Definition: Specifies the period related to the tax payment.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

Is restricted by

2.2.4   Date

2.2.4.1 ISODate

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Type: Date

2.2.5   DateTime

2.2.5.1 ISODateTime

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time

with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

Type: DateTime

2.2.6 IdentifierSet

2.2.6.1 AnyBICDec2014Identifier

Definition: Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: SWIFT; AnyBICIdentifier

Format

pattern	[A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

  Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* D00008

  – *Error Text:* Invalid BIC.

2.2.6.2 BICFIDec2014Identifier

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: SWIFT; BICIdentifier

Format

pattern	[A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

Constraints

- **BICFI**

  Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* D00001

  – *Error Text:* Invalid FI BIC.

2.2.6.3 IBAN2007Identifier

Definition: The International Bank Account Number is a code used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution as described in the 2007 edition of the ISO 13616 standard "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" and replaced by the more recent edition of the standard.

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: National Banking Association; International Bank Account Number (ISO 13616)

Format

pattern	[A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}

Constraints

- **IBAN**

  A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

  Error handling:

  – *Error severity:* Fatal

  – *Error Code:* D00003

  – *Error Text:* Invalid IBAN format or invalid check digits.

2.2.6.4 LEIIdentifier

Definition: Legal Entity Identifier is a code allocated to a party as described in ISO 17442 "Financial Services - Legal Entity Identifier (LEI)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: Global LEI System; LEIIdentifier

Format

pattern	[A-Z0-9]{18,18}[0-9]{2,2}

2.2.6.5 UUIDv4Identifier

Definition: Universally Unique IDentifier (UUID) version 4, as described in IETC RFC 4122 "Universally Unique IDentifier (UUID) URN Namespace".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: RFC4122; UUIDv4

Format

pattern	[a-f0-9]{8}-[a-f0-9]{4}-4[a-f0-9]{3}-[89ab][a-f0-9]{3}-[a-f0-9]{12}

2.2.7   Indicator

2.2.7.1 TrueFalseIndicator

Definition: A flag indicating a True or False value.

Type: Indicator

Meaning When True: True

Meaning When False: False

2.2.8   Quantity

2.2.8.1 DecimalNumber

Definition: Number of objects represented as a decimal number, for example 0.75 or 45.6.

Type: Quantity

Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

2.2.8.2 Number

Definition: Number of objects represented as an integer.

Type: Quantity

Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	0

2.2.9   Rate

2.2.9.1 PercentageRate

Definition: Rate expressed as a percentage, that is, in hundredths, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 of a percent, and 7.0 is 7%.

Type: Rate

Format

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	100.0

2.2.10   Text

2.2.10.1 Exact2NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 2 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]{2}

2.2.10.2 Exact4AlphaNumericText

Definition: Specifies an alphanumeric string with a length of 4 characters.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[a-zA-Z0-9]{4}

2.2.10.3 Max1025Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 1025 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	1025

2.2.10.4 Max105Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 105 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	105

2.2.10.5 Max128Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 128 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	128

2.2.10.6 Max140Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	140

2.2.10.7 Max15NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]{1,15}

2.2.10.8 Max16Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	16

2.2.10.9 Max2048Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	2048

2.2.10.10 Max256Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 256 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	256

2.2.10.11 Max34Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	34

2.2.10.12 Max350Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 350 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	350

2.2.10.13 Max35Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

2.2.10.14 Max4Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

2.2.10.15 Max70Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	70

2.2.10.16 PhoneNumber

Definition: The collection of information which identifies a specific phone or FAX number as defined by telecom services.

It consists of a "+" followed by the country code (from 1 to 3 characters) then a "-" and finally, any combination of numbers, "(", ")", "+" and "-" (up to 30 characters).

Type: Text

Format

pattern	\+[0-9]{1,3}-[0-9()+\-]{1,30}

2.2.10.17 SHA256SignatureText

Definition: Specifies a character string with an exact length of 32 binary bytes (64 hexadecimal text characters).

Used only for hex binary data only, supports only characters A-F and 0-9.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	([0-9A-F][0-9A-F]){32}

2.2.11   Year

2.2.11.1 ISOYear

Definition: Year represented by YYYY (ISO 8601).

Type: Year

Legal Notices

Copyright

SWIFT © . All rights reserved.

You may copy this publication within your organisation. Any such copy must include these legal notices.

Confidentiality

This publication may contain SWIFT or third-party confidential information. Do not disclose this publication outside your organisation without the prior written consent of SWIFT.

Disclaimer

The information in this publication may change from time to time. You must always refer to the latest available version.

SWIFT Standards Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Policy - End-User License Agreement

SWIFT Standards are licensed subject to the terms and conditions of the *SWIFT Standards IPR Policy - End-User License Agreement* available at www.swift.com > About SWIFT > Legal > SWIFT Standards IPR Policy.

Translations

The English version of SWIFT documentation is the only official version.

Trademarks and Patents

SWIFT is the trade name of S.W.I.F.T. SCRL. The following are registered trademarks of SWIFT: SWIFT, the SWIFT logo, 3SKey, Innotribe, Sibos, SWIFTNet, MyStandards, SWIFTReady, and Accord. Other product, service, or company names in this publication are trade names, trademarks, or registered trademarks of their respective owners.